Tibetan-English Folktales

Editors / གི་སྐད་དང་།

Tshe dbang rdo rje རྟེ་བོད་རྒྱ་རྡོ་རྗེ, Allie Thomas, Kevin Stuart, dPal ldan bKra shis ཉུབ་པ་ལྡན་བཀྲ་སི་

and 'Gyur med rgya mtsho ཇུ་རྡོད་རྣམ་མཚོ

Illustrations / རྒྱལ་བུ།

Rgyual bu  རྒྱལ་བུ་‍nor bhe རུང་ལྡེ་ལྡེ།
Contents

Preface <5>

Contributors <6>

1 Big Dreams <9>
2 The Liar <12>
3 Dawa’s Father <15>
4 Two Unlucky Men <19>
5 Two Rabbits and a Bear <22>
6 Two Thieves <25>
7 The Little Monkey <28>
8 The Tortoise Dies <31>
9 Donkey Butter <34>
10 A Clever Artist <37>
11 Wise Rabbit <40>
12 Uncle Dunba Plants Gold <43>
13 Mouse Princess Marries a Cat <46>
14 The Donkey-Tiger <49>
15 Horse and Camel <52>
16 Oilyball and Meatball <55>
17 Spitting Gold and Turquoise <58>
18 The Young Rooster <61>
19 Precious Juniper <64>
20 The Mirror <68>
21 The King and the Pork <71>
22 Half a Baby? (ཐུགས་མཐོ་སྐྱོན་) 8
23 The Boy Who Cried “Wolf!” (བོད་ལྕེ་འདུན་ལེན་གྱི་བཀོད་) 12
24 Monkey, Rabbit, Fox, and Horse (ཞུ་སྤྱི་ཐང་ལྔའི་ཚོགས་) 28
25 The Son, Daughter-In-Law, and Mother (བསྟན་དབྱེ་བསྡུན་དབྱེ་བསྡུན་) 31
26 A Wolf Wags His Tail (ེ་ཐམ་གཅིག་ཡི་ནི་འོང་ཟོམ་) 35
27 The Special Pot (ཐུགས་ཁྲི་) 42
28 The Frog Prince (ཐུགས་ཁྲི་) 49
29 Three Girls (ཐུགས་ཁྲི་) 56
30 A Bad Friend (ཐུགས་ཁྲི་) 63
31 The Timid Thief (ཐུགས་ཁྲི་) 70
32 The Death of Hunting Eagle (ེ་ཐམ་གཅིག་བུ་གུ་) 77
33 The Monk and the Butcher (ཐུགས་ཁྲི་) 84
34 Two Frogs (ཐུགས་ཁྲི་) 91
35 The Rock Lion Opens Its Mouth (ཐུགས་ཁྲི་) 98
36 The Birth-Giving Pot (ཐུགས་ཁྲི་) 105
37 Baby Rabbit and Cruel Bear (ཐུགས་ཁྲི་) 112
38 The Clever Ewe (ཐུགས་ཁྲི་) 119
39 The Magic Chicken (ཐུགས་ཁྲི་) 126
40 The Temple God Eats Tsamba (ཐུགས་ཁྲི་) 133
41 Artist Genga and Carpenter Genga (ཐུགས་ཁྲི་) 140
42 The Horned King (ཐུགས་ཁྲི་) 147
43 Two Lazy Men (ཐུགས་ཁྲི་) 154
44 The Dead Pigeon (ཐུགས་ཁྲི་) 161
45 Boxing a Monster (ཐུགས་ཁྲི་) 168
46 The Foolish Judge (ཐུགས་ཁྲི་) 175
47 The Tricky Horse (ཐུགས་ཁྲི་) 182

3
48 Rabbit Saves Pilgrim’s Life

49 A Strange Dream

50 A Beautiful Shining Star

51 Why the World is Unfair

52 A Man, a Rabbit, and a Wolf

53 Heart-Eyes

54 A Lazy Man Becomes Hardworking

55 The Frog Robber

56 A Chest of Stones

57 White Cow and Poor Girl

58 The Sun’s Reply

59 Gold Girl, Silver Girl, and Wood Girl

60 The Cruel King and the Peasant

61 A Cruel Queen

62 The Story of Dokang

63 Two Boys

64 A Nine-Headed Monster

65 Zhaxi’s Adventures

Vocabulary
Preface

The folktales in this book were collected by students in the 1997 and the 1998 English Teaching Training classes studying in the, at that time, Nationalities Department, Qinghai Normal University during summer and winter holidays. Allie Thomas and Kevin Stuart edited the English translations of the versions given to us by the students, which were then translated back into Tibetan by the students and edited by Tse dbang rdo rje, dPal ldan bkra shis and 'Gyur med rgya mtsho.

Allie Thomas 城 Kevin Stuart

Students who use this book should first try to understand the stories without looking at the Tibetan translations. Because most answers to the exercises can be found by reading the texts, students should not look at either the Tibetan or English versions until they have finished the exercises.

Kevin Stuart

Friday, May 26, 2006

Zi ling
# Contributors

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tibetan Name</th>
<th>English Name</th>
<th>Activity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>བོད་དུས།</td>
<td>Amy</td>
<td>folklore sources</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>བོད་དུས།</td>
<td>Art</td>
<td>exercises</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>རྐྱ་བོམ་</td>
<td>Belinda</td>
<td>exercises</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>རྐྱ་བོམ་</td>
<td>Ben</td>
<td>exercises</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>རྐྱ་བོམ་</td>
<td>Betty</td>
<td>exercises</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>རྐྱ་བོམ་</td>
<td>Billie</td>
<td>checker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>བོད་དུས།</td>
<td>Cindy</td>
<td>English checker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>བོད་དུས།</td>
<td>David</td>
<td>English checker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>རྐྱ་བོམ་</td>
<td>Debby</td>
<td>exercises</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>རྐྱ་བོམ་</td>
<td>Debrah</td>
<td>English checker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>རྐྱ་བོམ་</td>
<td>Diana</td>
<td>exercises</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>རྐྱ་བོམ་</td>
<td>Diana</td>
<td>translation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>བོད་དུས།</td>
<td>Dwight</td>
<td>illustrations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>བོད་དུས།</td>
<td>Ella</td>
<td>exercises</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>བོད་དུས།</td>
<td>Fiona</td>
<td>English checker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>བོད་དུས།</td>
<td>Frank</td>
<td>translation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>བོད་དུས།</td>
<td>Fred</td>
<td>translation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>བོད་དུས།</td>
<td>Gordon</td>
<td>translation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>བོད་དུས།</td>
<td>Hilda</td>
<td>exercises</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>བོད་དུས།</td>
<td>Holly</td>
<td>exercises</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>བོད་དུས།</td>
<td>Jack</td>
<td>English checker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Role</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>James</td>
<td>English checker</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Janis</td>
<td>exercises</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jerry</td>
<td>translation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jewel</td>
<td>translation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Joan</td>
<td>folktale sources</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>John</td>
<td>Tibetan checker &amp; translation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Joni</td>
<td>folktale sources</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Judy</td>
<td>English checker</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Julie</td>
<td>translation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Keith</td>
<td>translation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kenneth</td>
<td>translation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lena</td>
<td>exercises</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Linda</td>
<td>illustrations</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loretta</td>
<td>editor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mariah</td>
<td>checker</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mark</td>
<td>English checker</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mary</td>
<td>exercises</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Matthew</td>
<td>translation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mick</td>
<td>translation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monica</td>
<td>translation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Natalie</td>
<td>exercises</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Olivia</td>
<td>English checker</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patsy</td>
<td>English checker</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Role</td>
<td>Activities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Richard</td>
<td>English checker</td>
<td>exercises</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Robert</td>
<td>translation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ruby</td>
<td>translation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ruth</td>
<td>translation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sally</td>
<td>folklore sources</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sarah</td>
<td>translation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sarah</td>
<td>exercises</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serena</td>
<td>English checker</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shawn</td>
<td>English checker</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Susan</td>
<td>exercises</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suzanne</td>
<td>editor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tina</td>
<td>English checker</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tina</td>
<td>exercises</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tori</td>
<td>editor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. Vocabulary

had nothing except  "

moon rose

in excitement

lost forever

2. Text

A

n old man had nothing except a big bag of barley. One dark night as he was carrying it, he came to a big deep sea. He put the bag on the shore, leaned his head on the bag, and thought, “I will sell this bag of barley, buy a horse, and then I will sell the horse. After I sell the horse, I will take a wife, and she will have a baby. It will be a boy. But what will I call the baby?”

As the moon rose, he suddenly thought, “I will call the boy ‘Moon’.”

He jumped up in excitement. This made the bag of barley roll into the sea, where it was lost forever.
3. Put these words in the blanks below: in, an, the, a, as, on, to, of, and, me, him.

a. _____ old man had nothing except _____ big bag _____ barley.
b. One dark night _____ he was carrying it, he came _____ _____ big deep sea.
c. He put _____ bag _____ _____ shore, leaned his head _____ _____ bag, _____ thought, “I will sell this bag _____ barley, buy _____ horse, _____ then I will sell _____ horse.”
d. “After I sell _____ horse, I will take _____ wife, _____ she will have _____ baby.”
e. “It will be _____ boy.”
f. “But what will I call _____ baby?”

4. Put these sentences in the correct order.

a. ___ “As the moon rose, he suddenly thought, “I will call the boy ‘Moon’.”
b. ___ “But what will I call the baby?”
c. ___ “It will be a boy.”
d. ___ After I sell the horse, I will take a wife, and she will have a baby.”
e. ___ An old man had nothing except a big bag of barley.
f. ___ He jumped up in excitement.
g. ___ He put the bag on the shore and thought, “I will sell this bag of barley.”
h. ___ One dark night as he was carrying it, he came to a big deep sea.
i. ___ This made the bag of barley roll into the sea, where it was lost forever.
5. Write answers to these questions.

a. Who had only a bag of barley?
b. When did he come to a big sea?
c. Where did the old man put the bag?
d. What was put on the shore?
e. What was leaned on the bag?
f. What did the old man think he would name his son?
g. Where was the bag of barley lost?

6. What lesson does this story teach?

(a) Old people should not carry big bags of barley.
(b) A sea is very deep.
(c) Don’t believe something until it happens.
(d) A baby is very naughty.

7. Find words. The words may be spelled up ↑, down ↓, forward →, backward ←, and diagonally ↘.

```
NOTHING Y F J T
E C A R R Y A E O U A
X Y B A B B L R M H
C P E E D L R E P W
E E R O H S E A V E N
P N O A B E D O
T L I W N W R L O
E X C I T E E H W L M
H O R S E D E A E E
E X C I T E R S S H
G A B L L A C E T I T
```
The Liar

A man was famous for telling wonderful lies to people.

One day a Reincarnate Lama met him and wanted Liar to tell him a lie. Liar said, “I’m sorry. My mother passed away so I can’t lie anymore. Please come to my home tomorrow to pray for my mother.”

The Lama agreed to visit.

The following day was sunny and pleasant when the Lama and some of his fellow monks came to Liar’s home. Liar was stretched out by a nearby river, enjoying the sunshine.

“What are you doing here? Didn’t your mother just die?” asked the Lama.

“Well, you asked me to tell you a lie and I did,” replied Liar.

1. Vocabulary

famous མཐོང་

Reincarnate Lama རིྨྲི་མེད

sunny and pleasant དཔག་ཅིག་རང་བཤད།

wonderful lies ་ད་རུ་མ་

passed away (died) ལྷུན་པོས་ཤེས།

stretched out རྣམ་ཐོ་

2. Text
3. Put these words in the blanks below: man, people, Lama, Liar, I’m, mother, I, my, his, you, your.

a. A _____ was famous for telling lies to _____.
b. A Reincarnate _____ met him and wanted _____ to tell _____ a lie.
c. _____ said, “_____ sorry.”
d. “_____ mother passed away so _____ can’t lie anymore.”
e. “Please come to _____ home tomorrow to pray for _____ _____.”
f. The _____ agreed to visit.
g. It was sunny when the _____ and some of _____ fellow monks came to _____’s home.
h. _____ was by a nearby river.
i. “What are _____ doing here?”
j. “Didn’t _____ mother just die?” asked the _____.
k. “Well, _____ asked _____ to tell _____ a lie and _____ did,” replied _____.

4. Put these sentences in the correct order.

a. “Didn’t your mother just die?” asked the Lama.
b. “My mother passed away so I can’t lie anymore.”
c. “Please come to my home tomorrow to pray for my mother.”
d. “Well, you asked me to tell you a lie and I did,” replied Liar.
e. “What are you doing here?”
f. A man was famous for telling wonderful lies to people.
g. Liar said, “I’m sorry.”
h. Liar was stretched out by a nearby river, enjoying the sunshine.
i. One day a Reincarnate Lama met him and wanted Liar to tell him a lie.
j. The following day was sunny when the Lama came to Liar’s home.
k. The Lama agreed to visit.
5. Write answers to these questions.

a. What lie did Liar tell the Lama?
b. What was the weather like when the Lama visited Liar’s home?
c. Who did Liar trick?
d. Who was famous for lying?
e. Why did the Lama visit Liar’s home?
f. Why was Liar lying by a river?

6. Choose the correct words in bold.

a. A man was/were famous for telling wonderful lies to people/person.
b. One day a/an Reincarnate Lama met/meeted him and wanted Liar to tell/tells him a lie.
c. Liar said, “I’m/I is sorry.
d. My mother passed away so/but I can’t lying/lie anymore.”
e. “Please came/come to my/me home tomorrow to pray for my mother.”
f. The Lama agreed for/to visit.
g. The following day was/am sunny and pleasant.
h. Liar is/was stretched out by a nearby river.
Dawa’s Father

1. Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Tibetan</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dreaming</td>
<td>ཨེམས་ལེགས།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beggar</td>
<td>གྲན་པ།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nobleman</td>
<td>རླབ་པ།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mice</td>
<td>རྒྱན་དབང།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fantasizing</td>
<td>མི་འོད།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gnawed</td>
<td>གཞུགས།</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Text

Lazy Dongzhu was always dreaming rather than working and, because of this, he soon became a beggar.

One day a nobleman gave him a big sack of barley. He carried it to the forest, put it under a tree, and thought, “Maybe the mice will eat my barley.” Then he hung the sack on a branch and lay down under it.

He began fantasizing, “If tomorrow I get a big sack of barley and another big sack the next day and the next day, soon I will have a lot of barley. I will become a nobleman. I will get married and have a child. Should I name my child Dawa (Moon) or Nima (Sun)?” He decided to name his child after the bright moon he was looking at.

As Dongzhu was fantasizing, a mouse gnawed through the sack’s rope. The bag fell on Dongzhu and killed him.
3. Match phrases from Part I and Part II to make correct sentences.

PART I

a. “I will become _____

b. “I will get married _____

c. “Should I name my _____

D. As Dongzhu was fantasizing, a mouse _____

e. He began fantasizing, “If tomorrow I get a big sack of barley _____

f. He carried it to the forest, put it under a tree, and _____

g. He decided to name his child after _____

h. Lazy Dongzhu was always dreaming rather than _____

i. One day a nobleman gave _____

j. The bag fell on Dawa _____

k. Then he hung the sack on _____
PART II

1. a branch and lay down under it.
2. a nobleman.”
3. and another big sack the next day and the next day, soon I will have a lot of barley.”
4. and have a child.”
5. and killed him.
6. child Dawa (Moon) or Nima (Sun)?”
7. gnawed through the sack’s rope.
8. him a big sack of barley.
9. the bright moon he was looking at.
10. thought, “Maybe the mice will eat my barley.”
11. working and, because of this, he soon became a beggar.

4. Put these words in the blanks below

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
<th>C</th>
<th>D</th>
<th>E</th>
<th>F</th>
<th>G</th>
<th>H</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>my, Dongzhu, he,</td>
<td>nobleman, him, I, child.</td>
<td>Lazy _______ was dreaming rather than working. Because of this, _______ became a beggar.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>One day a _______ gave _______ a big sack of barley.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>_______ carried it to the forest, put it under a tree, and thought, “Maybe the mice will eat _______ barley.” Then _______ hung the sack on a branch and lay down under it. _______ began fantasizing, “If tomorrow _______ get a big sack of barley and another big sack the next day and the next day, soon _______ will have much barley.”</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“________ will become a nobleman. ________ will get married and have a ________.”</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“Should _______ name my _______ Dawa (Moon) or Nima (Sun)?”</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>_______ decided to name _______ _______ after the bright moon _______ was looking at.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>As _______ was fantasizing, a mouse gnawed through the sack’s rope.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The bag fell on _______ and killed _______.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

•17•
5. Find words. The words may be spelled up ↑, down ↓, forward →, backward ←, and diagonally ↖ ↗ ↘ ↙.

6. Write answers to these questions.

a. Why did Dongzhu become a beggar?
b. How did Dongzhu die?
c. How did Dongzhu get a sack of barley?
d. Why did he put the sack on a branch?
e. What did the mouse do?
Two Unlucky Men

1. Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Tibetan</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Tibetan</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Tibetan</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>property</td>
<td>སྣ་ཐོར་</td>
<td>childless</td>
<td>འཚི་མ་དེ་དཔྱི་</td>
<td>adorned</td>
<td>ཡུང་བ།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cobwebs</td>
<td>ཁྱིམ་པ། ཁྱིམ་</td>
<td>businessman</td>
<td>བུད་དབྱིག</td>
<td>this and that</td>
<td>སྲིད་པ་ སི་སོང་སྲིད་</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>greedy</td>
<td>འཛམ་བཤད་ཀྱི་</td>
<td>treasures</td>
<td>ཞབུ་ཞག</td>
<td>cleaned</td>
<td>ཤུགས་པ་ ཤུགས་གྲེ།</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

“Don’t count your chickens before they hatch.” རྣམ་སྐྱེས་བུད་དབྱིག་པ་འྱིན།

2. Text

The only property an old childless man had was a simple house adorned with many cobwebs. One day a businessman came to the old man’s home. After they talked about this and that the businessman said, “Please sell your home’s treasures to me.” The old man was greedy but he did not know what these treasures were. “I didn’t bring enough money with me. Now, I’ll go home and come back tomorrow with enough
money to buy your treasures,” said the businessman.
The old man was very happy when the businessman left. He thought, “I’ll get some money from
the businessman.” He then cleaned his simple house, dusting away the cobwebs.
The man came the next day. When he saw the cobwebs had disappeared he said, “Oh! My Lama!
You threw the valuable things away.” In the end, each got nothing from the other.

3. Put these words in the blanks below བོད་བོད་དོན་དོན་དོན་དོན་དོན་: a, an, the.

a. ____ only property ____ old childless man had was ____ house adorned with many cobwebs.
b. One day ____ businessman came to ____ old man’s home.
c. ____ businessman said, “Please sell your treasures to me.”
d. ____ old man was greedy.
e. “Now, I’ll go home and come back tomorrow,” said ____ businessman.
f. ____ old man was very happy when ____ businessman left.
g. He thought, “I’ll get money from ____ businessman.”
h. He dusted away ____ cobwebs.
i. ____ man came ____ next day.
j. When he saw ____ cobwebs had disappeared he said, “You threw ____ valuable things away.”
k. In ____ end, each got nothing from ____ other.
4. Put the sentences below in the correct order.

a. “I didn’t bring enough money with me.” ___
b. “My Lama!” ___
c. “Now, I’ll go home and come back tomorrow,” said the businessman. ___
d. “You threw the valuable things away.” ___
e. The businessman said, “Please sell your home’s treasures to me.” ___
f. He then cleaned his simple house, dusting away the cobwebs. ___
g. He thought, “I’ll get some money from the businessman.” ___
h. In the end, each got nothing from the other. ___
i. One day a businessman came to the old man’s home. ___
j. The man came the next day. ___
k. The old man was greedy but he didn’t know what these treasures were. ___
l. The old man was very happy when the businessman left. ___
m. An old man had a simple house adorned with many cobwebs. ___
n. When he saw the cobwebs had disappeared he said, “Oh!” ___

5. Mark these sentences T (true) or F (false).

a. The old man became very rich. T F
b. The businessman took the old man’s cobwebs home. T F
c. The businessman thought the old man’s cobwebs were valuable. T F
d. The businessman went to his home to get the old man’s sister. T F
e. The old man did not know what he had that was valuable. T F

6. Write answers to these questions.

a. Why did the old man clean his house?
b. Why did the businessman go back to his home?
c. At the end of the story was the old man happy or sad? Why or why not?

7. What lesson does this story teach?

a. Old men are not clever.
b. Don’t count your chickens before they hatch.
c. Businessmen are not clever.
Two Rabbits and a Bear

1. Vocabulary

rabbit ར་བའི་
hopping through རིན་པོ་བཞི་
one said to the other བོད་ཉེ་ཉེ་
beast སཐུད་པོ་
comes at you སོགས་ཐོབ་
threw himself ལོག་པ་
foot of the tree ཟོང་བཞི་
pretended སྦྱོད་བྱང་
tooth of the tree དབྱོང་བཞི
sniffed ཕུར་བའི་
held its breath སྤྱོད་བྱང་
too fat to climb up དབྱོར་བཞི་དབང་
trust རྒྱལ་རྩ་

*Illustration of two rabbits and a bear in a forest setting.*
Two young rabbits were hopping through the forest. One said to the other, “We’re good friends. We must help each other. If any beast comes at you, I’ll stay and help you.” The other rabbit said, “I will help you, too, if any beast comes at you.”

After a while, they heard a loud noise. It was a large bear. One rabbit climbed up a tree. The other was too fat to climb up. Instead, he threw himself at the foot of the tree and pretended to be dead.

A moment later the bear looked at the fat young rabbit and then sniffed him. The young rabbit held its breath. The bear thought he was dead and left.

The young rabbit hiding in the tree asked his friend, “The bear put his mouth near your ear. What did he say?”

The other rabbit answered, “He said, ‘Don’t trust your friend. He ran away from you when you needed his help the most.’”

3. Put these sentences in the correct order.

a. ___ “What did he say?”
b. ___ A moment later the bear looked at the fat young rabbit and then sniffed him.
c. ___ After a while, they heard a loud noise.
d. ___ It was a large bear.
e. ___ One rabbit climbed up a tree.
f. ___ The bear thought he was dead and left.
g. ___ The other rabbit answered, “He said, ‘Don’t trust your friend.’”
h. ___ The rabbit in the tree said, “The bear put his mouth near your ear.”
i. ___ Two young rabbits were hopping through the forest.
4. Write answers to these questions.

a. When the rabbits heard the bear, what did they do?
b. Where were the rabbits hopping?
c. Who was fat?
d. Who were hopping through the forest?
e. Why did the bear leave the rabbit and not hurt him?
f. Was the rabbit in the tree a good friend? Why?

5. Put these words in the blanks below.

a. Two young rabbits _____ hopping through _____ forest.
b. One said _____ _____ other, “We’re good friends.”
c. “If any beast comes _____ you, I’ll stay _____ help you.”
d. _____ other rabbit said, “I will help you, too, if any beast comes _____ you.”
e. After _____ while, they heard _____ loud noise.
f. It _____ _____ large bear.
g. One rabbit climbed up _____ tree.
h. _____ other _____ too fat _____ climb up.
i. He threw himself _____ _____ foot _____ _____ tree _____ pretended _____ be dead.
j. _____ moment later _____ bear looked _____ _____ young rabbit _____ then sniffed him.
k. _____ young rabbit held its breath.
l. _____ bear thought he _____ dead _____ left.
m. _____ young rabbit hiding in _____ tree said, “_____ bear put its mouth near your ear.”
n. “He ran away when you needed his help _____ most.”

6. Spell the words below correctly.

a. gnuo _____
b. tbabri _____
c. hhtguro _____
d. reab _____
e. rete _____
f. mcilb _____
g. thoum _____
Two Thieves

1. Vocabulary

- thieves (thief)
- dug a hole
- crawled
- waited outside
- unknown
- mice (mouse)
- shouted

2. Text

One evening, two thieves went to rob a house. When they reached the house, they dug a hole in a wall. One crawled inside and the other waited outside.

Unknown to the thieves, there were many mice in the house. The woman of the house saw a mouse crawl into the house. “Look, there’s one now crawling into our house,” she said to her husband.

This frightened the thief so much that he quickly crawled outside. He told the other thief, “A woman saw me crawl inside.”

The other thief did not believe him and said, “Let’s both crawl into the house together.”

As the two thieves were crawling into the house, two mice also crawled into the house. The woman saw the two mice crawling into the house and shouted to her husband, “Catch them!” The two thieves were terribly frightened. They thought the woman had seen them so they ran away.
কুতুরাণীধন্য

যোগ্য পদবিনাশক কুসাম্পীণকালের মধ্যে ধৃতি প্রকাশ করে থাকে। তার জন্য আমি উদ্যোগ নেওয়া প্রয়োজন।

কুতুরাণীধন্য সম্প্রদায়ের জন্য। তাদের জন্য সম্প্রদায়ের জন্য সম্প্রদায়ের জন্য। তাদের জন্য সম্প্রদায়ের জন্য।

বৈষ্ণবধীন অর্থোধীনন্ত অর্থভোগী অর্থভোগী অর্থভোগী অর্থভোগী অর্থভোগী অর্থভোগী অর্থভোগী।


3. Find words. The words may be spelled up ↑, down ↓, forward→, backward←, and diagonally ↖ ↖ ↖ ↖.

---

UESUOHGUDENNEWQOMDKTHEUTO
IFTNOSIHUSEOACES
TIDNAWKREUHWERENIN
OTBELIEVETHOUGHTOT

•26•
4. Each of the sentences below have the number of mistakes indicated by the number in parentheses. Rewrite each sentence correctly.

a. (3) One morning three thieves went to rob a shop.
b. (3) When he reached the house, he dug a hole in a door.
c. (2) One crawled outside and the other waited inside.
d. (3) The man of the tent saw a sheep crawl into the house.
e. (2) This frightened the girls so much that they slowly crawled outside.

5. Write answers to these questions.

a. The house had many what?
b. What did the woman see crawl into the house?
c. What did they dig?
d. Who went to rob a house?
e. Why were the two thieves frightened and why did they run away?

6. Mark these sentences T (true) or F (false).

a. The second thief did not believe the first thief. T F
b. The thieves went to rob a house late one night. T F
c. The two thieves crawled into the house together. T F
d. The woman saw the thieves crawl into the house. T F
e. Two women lived in the house. T F

7. Put the sentences in the correct order.

a. __ “Look, there’s one now crawling into our house,” she said to her husband.
b. ___ As the two thieves were crawling into the house, two mice did the same thing.
c. ___ He told the other thief, “A woman saw me crawl inside.”
d. ___ One crawled inside and the other waited outside.
e. ___ One evening, two thieves went to rob a house.
f. ___ The two thieves were terribly frightened.
g. ___ The woman of the house saw a mouse crawl into the house.
h. ___ The woman shouted to her husband, “Catch them!”
i. ___ They ran away.
j. ___ When they reached the house, they dug a hole in a wall.
The Little Monkey

1. Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Tibetan</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monkey</td>
<td>བོད་ རྡོ་</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cornfield</td>
<td>རྣ་མེ་ འཕྲུལ་</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ears of corn</td>
<td>རྣ་མེ་ འཕྲུལ་</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>armful</td>
<td>རྣ་མེ་ འཕྲུལ་</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>peach</td>
<td>རྣ་མེ་ འཕྲུལ་</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laden</td>
<td>རྣ་མེ་ འཕྲུལ་</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spied (saw, noticed)</td>
<td>རྣ་མེ་ འཕྲུལ་</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>watermelon</td>
<td>རྣ་མེ་ འཕྲུལ་</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chased (ran after)</td>
<td>རྣ་མེ་ འཕྲུལ་</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deep in the forest</td>
<td>རྣ་མེ་ འཕྲུལ་</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Text

A little monkey went down a mountain and into a cornfield. After looking at the many large ears of corn, he decided to take some and picked an armful.

As he walked away, he noticed a peach tree laden with big red peaches. He threw down the corn and picked two peaches. He had to hold one peach in each hand because they were so large.

As he walked along with the peaches, he spied a watermelon field. Noticing immediately that the watermelons were larger than the peaches, he threw down the peaches and started toward the biggest watermelon.

Suddenly he saw a small rabbit hopping away. He turned from the watermelon and chased after the rabbit into the forest.

After a long time of chasing the rabbit, the monkey gave up. Now he was lost deep in the forest and had nothing.
3. Find words. The words may be spelled up ↑, down ↓, forward →, backward ←, and diagonally ↵.
4. Put these sentences in the correct order.

a. ___A little monkey went down a mountain.
b. ___After a long time of casing the rabbit, the monkey gave up.
c. ___Finally the monkey had nothing.
d. ___He chased after the rabbit.
e. ___He decided to take some and picked an armful.
f. ___He had to hold one peach in each hand because they were so large.
g. ___He looked at many large ears of corn.
h. ___He noticed a peach tree laden with big red peaches.
i. ___He saw a small rabbit hopping away.
j. ___He saw a watermelon field.
k. ___He started walking toward the biggest watermelon.
l. ___He threw down the peaches.
m. ___He turned from the watermelon.

5. Mark these sentences T (true) or F (false).

a. The monkey ate a big watermelon.  T F
b. The monkey caught the rabbit.  T F
c. The monkey did not pick a watermelon.  T F
d. The monkey picked an armful of corn.  T F
e. The monkey picked an armful of peaches.  T F
f. The monkey was big.  T F

6. Write answers to these questions.

a. At the beginning of the story, where is the monkey?
b. At the end of the story, where is the monkey?
c. How many watermelons did the monkey pick?
d. What did the monkey pick first?
e. Why did the monkey only pick two peaches?
f. Why did the monkey run into the forest?
The Tortoise Dies

1. Vocabulary

- storks
- tortoise
- waterweed
- drying up
- lost his grip
- dropped

2. Text

Two storks and a tortoise lived together in a waterweed area that was drying up.

The storks said, “There will soon be no water so we have to leave you. Goodbye.”

The tortoise said, “Please take me with you.”

“How?” a stork asked.

The tortoise said, “You two get a long stick. Each of you hold one end of the stick and I will hold the middle of the stick in my mouth.”

The two storks agreed.

A bit later the storks were flying over a small village. Each stork held one end of a stick. The tortoise was holding onto the middle of the stick with his mouth.

A village child said, “What clever storks!”

The tortoise angrily shouted, “It was my idea!”

As soon as he said this, he lost his grip on the branch, dropped from the sky, and died.
3. Write the speaker in the blanks below. a stork, the storks, the tortoise, a child.

a. ________ “There will soon be no water so we have to leave you. Goodbye.”
b. ________ “Please take me with you.”
c. ________ “How?”
d. ________ “You two get a long stick.”
e. ________ “Each of you hold one end of the stick and I’ll hold the middle of the stick.”
f. ________ “What clever storks!”
g. ________ “It was my idea!”

4. Write answers to these questions.

a. Who lived together?
b. Why did the storks want to leave their home?
c. Why did the tortoise not want to stay by himself?
d. How did the tortoise die?
e. What did the village child say?
f. What did the storks do with the stick?
g. What lesson does this story teach?
5. Put these sentences in the correct order.

a. Two tortoises and one stork lived together. T F
b. The animals lived in a place where there was water. T F
c. There was too much rain and it was too wet. T F
d. The storks did not help the tortoise. T F
e. The frog had a very good idea. T F
f. A village child killed the tortoise. T F

6. Put these sentences in the correct order.

a. __ “Each of you hold one end of the stick.”
b. __ “How?” a stork asked.
c. __ “I will hold the middle of the stick in my mouth.”
d. ___A village child said, “What clever storks!”
e. ___A waterweed area was drying up.
f. ___As soon as he said this, he lost his grip on the branch.
g. ___The storks said, “There will soon be no water.”
h. ___The tortoise angrily shouted, “It was my idea!”
i. ___The tortoise dropped from the sky, and died.
j. ___The tortoise said, “Please take me with you.”
k. ___The tortoise said, “You two get a long stick.”
l. ___The two storks agreed.
m. ___Two storks and a tortoise lived together.
n. ___”We must leave you.”
1. Vocabulary

owned much property = ཡོད་ཡོད་པ་ | ཕྱོགས་ནས།
speechless བཞིན་པ་
charged a butter tax ཡོང་བོར་
severely punished སྒྲུབ་དཔག་མཁུན།
storeroom སྡོད་།
donkey གོའི་སྤྱི་

2. Text

A king **owned much property**. Every year the King **charged** the local people a **butter tax**. If they did not pay the butter tax, he **severely punished** them. For this reason the local people did not like the King.

One day Uncle Dunba went near the King’s home with his son and began beating his son. When the King saw this he asked Uncle Dunba, “Why are you beating your son?”

Uncle Dunba sadly replied, “My son killed my donkey. Now I can’t pay you your butter tax.”

The King was **speechless** for a moment and then replied, “You pay your tax with donkey butter?”

“That’s right,” said Uncle Dunba.

The King took Uncle Dunba to his **storeroom** and asked, “Do you know which is the donkey butter?”

“Yes,” replied Uncle Dunba.

The King said, “I do not eat donkey butter. Please take your donkey butter out of my storeroom.” Uncle Dunba chose the best butter and happily returned to his home.
a. ___ king owned much property.
b. Every year, ___ King charged the local people ___ butter tax.
c. If they did not pay ___ butter tax, he severely punished them.
d. ___ this reason ___ local people didn’t like ___ King.
e. Uncle Dunba went near ___ King’s home with his son ___ began beating his son.
f. When ___ King saw this he asked Uncle Dunba, “ Why are you beating your son?”
g. ___ King was speechless ___ moment ___ then replied.
h. ___ King took Uncle Dunba to his storeroom ___ asked, “Which is ___ donkey butter?”
i. ___ King said, “I do not eat donkey butter.”
j. “Please take your donkey butter out ___ my storeroom.”
k. Uncle Dunba chose ___ best butter ___ happily returned to his home.
4. Put these statements in the correct order and write the name of the speaker (the King, Uncle Dunba) in the blanks.

a. ( )__________ “Do you know which is the donkey butter?”
b. ( )__________ “Please take your donkey butter out of my storeroom.”
c. ( )__________ “My son killed my donkey.”
d. ( )__________ “Now I can’t pay you your butter tax.”
e. ( )__________ “That’s right.”
f. ( )__________ “Why are you beating your son?”
g. ( )__________ “Yes.”
h. ( )__________ “You pay your tax with donkey butter?”

5. Write answers to these questions.

a. Who didn’t own much property?
b. Who were severely punished?
c. Why was the King not liked?
d. Why did Uncle Dunba beat his son?
f. How did Uncle Dunba trick the King?
g. What lesson does this story teach?

6. Put these sentences in the correct order.

a. “Now I can’t pay you your butter tax.” ___
b. “Do you know which is the donkey butter?” ___
c. “You pay your tax with donkey butter?” ___
d. A king owned much property. ___
e. He began beating his son. ___
f. If they did not pay the butter tax, he severely punished them. ___
g. The King charged the local people a butter tax. ___
h. The King was speechless for a moment. ___
i. The local people did not like the King. ___
j. Uncle Dunba chose the best butter and happily returned to his home. ___
k. Uncle Dunba sadly replied, “My son killed my donkey.” ___
l. Uncle Dunba went near the King’s home. ___
A king named Tiger Lion had a lot of money, gold, and servants. His right leg was twisted and his left eye was blind.

One morning when he was out hunting, he saw an artist painting by a river. The King saw that the picture he was painting was very nice. He asked the artist to paint a picture of him and the artist agreed.

The finished painting showed the King without a twisted leg and his left eye was not blind. The King looked at the painting, became very angry, killed the artist, and called for another artist. This painter was very famous. He painted the King as he really was with a twisted leg and a blind left eye. When the King saw this painting, he again became angry and killed the painter.

The next day he called for another artist named Dorji. He was not a famous painter but he was very clever. In his painting, the King was very handsome, his right leg was up on a rock bracing a gun, and his left eye was closed as though he were shooting a tiger.

The King was very pleased with this painting and gave the painter a lot of money and gold.
3. Put these words in the blanks below: a, the, and, of, an.

a. ___ king named Tiger Lion had ___ lot ___ money, gold, ___ servants.
b. His right leg was twisted ___ his left eye was blind.
c. He saw ___ artist painting by ___ river.
d. ___ King saw that ___ painting was very nice.
e. He asked ___ artist to paint ___ picture ___ him ___ artist agreed.
f. ___ finished painting showed ___ King without ___ twisted leg ___ his left eye was not blind.
g. ___ King looked at ___ painting, became angry, killed ___ artist, ___ called for another artist.
h. He painted ___ King as he really was with ___ twisted leg ___ blind left eye.
i. When ___ King saw this painting, he killed ___ painter.
j. ___ next day he called for another artist.
k. He was not ___ famous painter
l. In his painting, ___ King’s right leg was up on ___ rock bracing ___ gun.
m. ___ King was pleased with this painting ___ gave ___ painter ___ lot ___ money ___ gold.
4. Match phrases from Part I and Part II to make correct sentences.

**PART I**

a. He painted the King as he really ___
b. He was not a famous ___
c. In his painting, the King was very handsome, his right leg was ___
d. The finished painting showed the King ___
e. The King looked at the painting, became ___
f. The next day he called for ___
g. This painter ___
h. When the King saw this painting, ___

**PART II**

1. another artist named Dorji.
2. he again became angry and killed the painter.
3. painter but he was very clever.
4. up on a rock bracing a gun, and his left eye was closed.
5. very angry, killed the artist, and called for another artist.
6. was very famous.
7. was with a twisted leg and a blind left eye.
8. without a twisted leg and his left eye was not blind.

5. Write answers to these questions.

a. How many artists painted the King?
b. Why did the King kill the first artist?
c. Why did the King kill the second artist?
d. Do you think Dorji was clever? Why?
e. If you were the artist, how would you paint the King?

6. What lesson does this story teach?

a. Be kind to your parents.
b. Be kind to the King.
c. Be careful how you describe someone with power.
d. Be careful how you talk in front of someone with power.
I. Vocabulary

begged चाहिये चाहिये | noticed टिकटिक्को | angrily demanded ताल्लूक लगाउनु
reflection विचार | snarled शमशम | mane चेकुली रुक्ता
attack बिल्कुल हमला | drowned डूबनु

“No one can compare to me.” (“No one is my equal.” / “I am better than everyone else.”) नेपालीमा नेपालीमाछै

2. Text

Lion killed and ate many animals every day in a large forest. The other animals begged him to kill and eat only one animal each day and Lion agreed.

At last, it was time for Rabbit to be eaten. As Rabbit walked to where Lion was waiting, he noticed a deep well. Lion roared, “Why are you so late?”

Rabbit replied, “I was caught by a lion.”

Lion angrily demanded, “Who is this other lion?!”

Rabbit answered, “The other lion said, ‘No one can compare to me. Everybody is my servant.’”

This enraged Lion. He ordered Rabbit to show him where the other lion was.

Rabbit led Lion to the well and told him that the other lion was inside.

Lion looked inside and saw his reflection. He thought it was his enemy and snarled. The "other lion" snarled back. He shook his mane and the “other lion” did the same thing. Lion then jumped into the well to attack his enemy and drowned.
Rabbit, his, he, him, me, you, I, my.

a. _____ killed and ate many _____ every day in a large forest.
b. The other _____ begged _____ to kill and eat only one animal each day and _____ agreed.
c. It was time for _____ to be eaten.
d. As _____ walked to where _____ was waiting, _____ noticed a deep well.
e. _____ roared, “Why are _____ so late?”
f. _____ replied, “_____ was caught by a _____.”
g. _____ angrily demanded, “Who is this _____ _____?!”
h. _____ answered, “The other _____ said, ‘No one can compare to _____.’”
i. “Everybody is _____ servant.”
j. This enraged _____.
k. _____ ordered _____ to show _____ where the _____ _____ was.
l. _____ led _____ to the well and told _____ that the _____ _____ was inside.
m. _____ looked inside and saw _____ reflection.
n. _____ thought it was _____ enemy and snarled.
o. The “_____ _____” snarled back.
p. _____ shook _____ mane and the “_____ _____” did the same thing.
q. _____ jumped into the well to attack _____.
4. Find words. The words may be spelled up ↑, down ↓, forward →, backward ←, and diagonally ↖ ↗ → → → → ↖ ↗ ↘ ↘ ↗ ↗.

5. Write answers to these questions.

a. Why did Lion kill animals?
d. Who was clever? Lion? Rabbit? Why?
b. Where did Lion kill animals?
e. What did Lion shake?
c. Why was Lion very angry?
f. How did Lion die?

6. Put these sentences in the correct order.

a. ___He ordered Rabbit to show him where the other lion was.
b. ___It was time for Rabbit to be eaten.
c. ___Lion agreed.
d. ___Lion angrily demanded, “Who is this other lion?!”
e. ___Lion jumped into the well and drowned.
f. ___Lion killed and ate many animals.
g. ___Lion roared, “Why are you so late?”
h. ___Rabbit answered, “The other lion said, ‘No one can compare to me.’”
i. ___Rabbit led Lion to the well.
j. ___Rabbit noticed a deep well.
k. ___Rabbit replied, “I was caught by a lion.”
l. ___Rabbit walked to where Lion was waiting.
m. ___The other animals begged him to eat only one animal each day.
n. ___This enraged Lion.
Uncle Dunba Plants Gold

1. Vocabulary

stolen

piece by piece

foolish

harvest

delighted (very glad; very happy)

2. Text

One day Uncle Dunba took some gold he had stolen from a rich man’s home, went to a field near the King’s palace, and began to plant it, piece by piece. The King looked out his window, saw Uncle Dunba planting the gold, walked over, and asked, “What are you doing?”

Uncle Dunba said, “I am planting gold. One year later it will be much more.”

The foolish King thought this was a good idea and asked Uncle Dunba to plant ten measures of his gold.

A year later the King came to take his harvest. Meanwhile, Uncle Dunba had collected gold from the local people and had collected enough that he gave twenty measures of gold to the King.

The King was so delighted with this that he gave Uncle Dunba a hundred measures of gold to plant.

The following year the King visited Uncle Dunba and asked for his harvest. Uncle Dunba sadly said, “Your gold died. There is no gold for you this year.”

In fact, Uncle Dunba had given all the gold to local people.
Uncle Dunba had some gold he had stolen from a rich man’s home.

The King asked Uncle Dunba to plant ten measures of his gold.

He went to a field near the King’s palace.

He planted the gold.

A year later the King came to take his harvest.

“There is no gold for you this year.”

The King was delighted and gave Uncle Dunba a hundred measures of gold to plant.

Uncle Dunba had given all the gold to local people.

Uncle Dunba had some gold he had stolen from a rich man’s home.

3. Put these sentences in the correct order.

a. “There is no gold for you this year.”

b. A year later the King came to take his harvest.

c. He gave twenty measures of gold to the King.

d. He planted the gold.

e. He went to a field near the King’s palace.

f. The King asked Uncle Dunba to plant ten measures of his gold.

g. The King saw Uncle Dunba planting the gold.

h. The King was delighted and gave Uncle Dunba a hundred measures of gold to plant.

i. Uncle Dunba had collected gold from the local people.

j. Uncle Dunba had given all the gold to local people.

k. Uncle Dunba had some gold he had stolen from a rich man’s home.
4. Did the King or Uncle Dunba say these sentences?

a. ___________ “I am planting gold.”
b. ___________ “One year later it will be much more.”
c. ___________ “Your gold died.”
d. ___________ “There is no gold for you this year.”
e. ___________ “What are you doing?”

5. Choose the correct word in bold.

a. One day Uncle Dunba take/took some gold he had stolen/steal from a rich man’s home, go/went to a field near the King’s palace, and beginning/began to plant/planted it.
b. The King looking/looked out his window, saw/seeing Uncle Dunba plants/planting the gold, walker/walked over, and talking/asked, “What are you doing?”
c. Uncle Dunba said/talked, “I am planting/plants gold.”

6. Find words. The words may be spelled up ↑, down ↓, forward →, backward ←, and diagonally ↖ ↘ ↙ ↖.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>A</th>
<th>L</th>
<th>P</th>
<th>H</th>
<th>O</th>
<th>G</th>
<th>I</th>
<th>S</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>U</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>W</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>Q</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>W</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>V</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>Z</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>U</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Mouse Princess Marries a Cat

1. Vocabulary

- cat ོད།
- loving (care for very much) སེམས།
- would be taken care of སེམས་འོང་བོ།
- noblemen གཞོན། པམ་བོ།
- protect ཀོང།
- wedding རྡོོ་བོ།
Long ago, Mouse King and his pretty daughter lived in a beautiful kingdom. Mouse King was very loving to Mouse Princess. He wanted to make sure that, after he died, she would be taken care of by a strong husband.

One day he called all the noblemen to his palace and ordered them to find a strong man to marry Mouse Princess.

One nobleman said, “Mouse Princess should marry Wind. He can go anywhere he likes. No one can stop Wind.” Mouse King agreed and spoke to Wind, but Wind told him that he was not strong enough to protect his daughter. He told the King that Wall was stronger because he could stop Wind.

The King went to see Wall. Wall told him that even a cat could jump over him, so a cat would be a better match for his daughter.

Mouse King found a strong cat. Cat agreed to marry Mouse Princess.

Two weeks later Mouse King held a great wedding for his daughter.

That night Cat, who Mouse King thought would protect his Mouse Princess, ate her.
3. Put these words in the blanks below: Mouse King, daughter, Mouse Princess, he, she, his, cat, him, them, King, her.

a. _____ and _____ pretty _____ lived in a beautiful kingdom.
b. _____ was very loving to _____, _____ wanted to make sure that, after _____ died, _____ would be taken care of by a strong husband.
c. _____ called all the noblemen to _____ palace and ordered _____ to find a strong man to marry _____.
d. A nobleman said, “______ should marry Wind. _____ can go anywhere _____ likes.
e. No one can stop Wind.”
f. _____ agreed and spoke to Wind.
g. Wind told _____ that _____ was not strong enough to protect _____ _____.
h. _____ told the _____ that Wall was stronger because _____ could stop Wind.
i. The _____ went to see Wall.
j. Wall told _____ that even a _____ could jump over _____, so a _____ would be a better match for _____ _____ _____ found a strong _____.
k. _____ agreed to marry _____.
l. Two weeks later _____ held a great wedding for _____ _____.
m. That night _____, who _____ thought would protect _____ _____, ate _____.

4. Put these sentences in the correct order.

a. “Mouse Princess should marry Wind.” __
b. Cat agreed to marry Mouse Princess. __
c. Cat ate Mouse Princess. __
d. He told the King that Wall was stronger because he could stop Wind. __
e. Mouse King held a great wedding for his daughter. __
f. Mouse King lived in a beautiful kingdom. __
g. Mouse King ordered his noblemen to find a strong man to marry Mouse Princess. __
h. Mouse King wanted his daughter to have a strong husband. __
i. Wall told him a cat would be a better match for his daughter. __

5. Write answers to these questions.

a. Why did Cat eat his wife?
b. Why did Wind say Wall would be a better husband?
c. Why did Wall say Cat would be a better husband?
d. Why did a nobleman say Wind would be a good husband?
e. Why did King Mouse want a strong husband for his daughter?
Many years ago, a villager had a donkey. The villager took his donkey to a mountain to let it graze. He thought that if he could fatten the donkey he could then sell it and make a lot of money.

One day as he was taking his donkey to the mountain, he saw a tiger. At first, he thought it was sleeping. He was very afraid. However, after the tiger did not move for a long time he realized that it was dead. He thought, “If I can take this tiger’s skin and put it on my donkey, people will think it is a tiger. Then it can eat as much grain as it likes because no one will try to stop a tiger.” He took a sharp knife from a sheath at his waist, skinned the tiger, and covered the donkey with the skin. Then he drove his donkey to some nearby fields to let it eat.

Local people thought it was a real tiger and were too afraid to do anything. After some time however, the donkey ate so much grain that the people decided that they must take action.

The farmers met and decided to kill the tiger. They took farm tools and moved close to the tiger. The tiger did not seem bothered by this. The farmers then beat the tiger to death. When they turned it over, they saw it was a donkey.

The donkey’s owner heard about this and became very sad. He regretted putting the tiger’s skin on his donkey and taking it to the fields but it was too late.
3. Put these sentences in the correct order.

a. ___A villager had a donkey.

b. ___He covered the donkey with the skin.

c. ___He drove his donkey to nearby fields.

d. ___He realized that the tiger was dead.

e. ___He regretted putting the tiger’s skin on his donkey.

f. ___He skinned the tiger.

g. ___He took his donkey to a mountain to let it graze.

h. ___It was too late.

i. ___Local people were afraid.

j. ___One day he saw a tiger.

k. ___People decided that they must take action.

l. ___The donkey ate much grain.

m. ___The donkey’s owner was sad.

n. ___The farmers decided to kill the tiger.

o. ___They beat the tiger to death.

p. ___They saw it was a donkey.
4. Choose the correct word in **bold**.

a. Many **year/years** ago, a villager **had/have** a donkey.
b. The villager **take/took** his donkey to a mountain to let it **graze/grazing**.
c. He **think/thought** that if he could fatten the donkey he could then **sell/sold** it and **making/make** much money.
d. As he was **taking/took** his donkey to the mountain, he **see/saw** a tiger.
e. At first, he **think/thought** it was **sleeping/sleep**.
f. He **am/was** very afraid.
g. He **took/take** a sharp knife from a sheath at **his/him** waist, **skinned/skin** the tiger, and **covered/covering** the donkey **with/for** the skin.

5. Match phrases from Part I and Part II to make correct sentences.

**PART I**

a. After some time however, the donkey ate so much ____
b. He regretted putting the tiger’s skin on ____
c. Local people thought it was a real ____
d. The donkey’s owner heard ____
  
e. The farmers met and ____
  
f. The farmers then ____
  
g. The tiger did not ____
  
h. They took farm tools and ____
  
i. When they turned it over, ____

**PART II**

1. about this and became very sad.
2. beat the tiger to death.
3. decided to kill the tiger.
4. grain that the people decided that they must take action.
5. his donkey and taking it to the fields but it was too late.
6. moved close to the tiger.
7. seem bothered by this.
8. they saw it was a donkey.
9. tiger and were too afraid to do anything.

6. Write answers to these questions.

a. Who had a donkey?

b. Why did he take the donkey to a mountain?

c. Where did the donkey graze?

d. When did the villager see a tiger?

e. Why was the villager at first afraid?

f. Why did the villager put the tiger skin on the donkey?

g. What did the man take from his sheath?

h. Why did the man take his donkey to a field?

i. Why were local people at first afraid?

j. How did the villagers kill the donkey?

k. What did the villager regret?

l. Why was the villager sad?
Horse and Camel

1. Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Tibetan</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>camel</td>
<td>རྡོག་</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>envious</td>
<td>རྟེག་པ།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>agreed</td>
<td>འཕྲོད།</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Text

Long ago Horse and Camel were friends. When they went to parties, people always commented on how beautiful Camel’s tail was. No one ever said Horse’s tail was beautiful. This made Horse sad and envious of Camel’s beautiful tail.

One day when Camel went to the river to drink, Horse ran up to him and said, “Dear Camel, my friends are having a wedding tomorrow. I don’t want to go by myself. Please come with me. It will be better if you are there because you are so beautiful. I’m sure my friends will like you.”

Camel was flattered to hear this but he told Horse he could not attend.

Horse happily said, “Well, since you can’t go dear friend, may I borrow your tail for the wedding? I will return it to you as soon as it is over. I’ll bring it to you here.”

Camel agreed and let Horse borrow his tail. As soon as Horse got the tail, he ran away.

Camel waited by the river for Horse to return his tail the next day. He waited in vain because Horse never came.

This is why even today, when a camel takes a drink of water, it looks up after each drink. The camel is looking for Horse to return his tail.

This also explains why, today, the camel’s tail is ugly and the horse’s tail is beautiful.
3. Put these sentences in the correct order.

a. ___ At parties, people commented on Camel’s beautiful tail.

b. ___ Camel let Horse borrow his tail.

c. ___ Camel waited by the river for Horse to return his tail.

d. ___ Camel went to the river to drink.

e. ___ Horse and Camel were friends.

f. ___ Horse got the tail and ran away.

g. ___ Horse never came.

h. ___ Horse was sad and envious of Camel’s beautiful tail.

i. ___ The camel is looking for Horse to return his tail.

j. ___ When a camel takes a drink of water, it looks up.
4. Write answers to these questions.

a. Today, why is the camel’s tail ugly?
b. Who flattered Camel?
c. Who borrowed Camel’s tail?
d. Why does the camel look up after each drink of water?
e. Why was Horse sad and envious?

5. Mark these sentences T (true) or F (false).

a. Horse and Camel were never friends.  T  F
b. Today, the horse’s tail is beautiful and the camel’s tail is also beautiful.  T  F
c. Horse said he was going to a wedding.  T  F
d. Camel told Horse he would go to the wedding.  T  F
e. Horse returned the tail to Camel.  T  F

6. Choose the correct word in bold.

a. Long ago Horse and Camel were/was friends.
b. When they going/went to parties, people commented/comments on how beautiful Camel’s tail was/are.
c. No one ever said/say Horse’s tail was/am beautiful.
d. This made/make Horse sad and envious of Camel’s beautiful tail/tail’s.
e. Camel was/am flattered to hear/hearing this but he told/tell Horse he could/were not attend.
Oilyball and Meatball

Oilyball and Meatball were friends. Oilyball was smart and knew how to cook. Meatball was stupid and could not cook. Oilyball knew that his friend could not cook and said, “Dear friend, tomorrow you go to the forest and fetch some firewood. I’ll stay here and cook. However, if you would like to cook, I’ll go to the forest and fetch the firewood.”

Meatball replied, “I will go to the forest.” The next morning Meatball went to the forest while Oilyball cooked at home. That evening, Meatball came back carrying much firewood. Oilyball had supper ready and waiting for him. They ate supper together.

Many weeks passed. Every day Meatball fetched firewood. It was hard work and he was exhausted. One afternoon, Meatball came back early because he wanted to learn how Oilyball cooked. He secretly watched Oilyball. He was very surprised to see that Oilyball put himself in the hot pot. A moment later supper was done. Meatball thought to himself, “Cooking is easy.”

He entered the house as if he had seen nothing and said, “I won’t go to the forest to fetch firewood tomorrow. You go and I’ll stay home and cook.”

The next day Oilyball went to the forest while Meatball stayed at home. When it came time to cook Meatball put himself into the hot pot. He could not move because he was just meat. He was not oily like Oilyball. When Oilyball came back, he saw his friend dead in the hot pot and felt sad and alone.
3. Who said or thought the sentences below?

- Oilyball/Meatball “Cooking is easy.”
- Oilyball/Meatball “Dear friend, tomorrow you go to the forest and fetch some firewood. I’ll stay here and cook. However, if you would like to cook, I’ll go to the forest and fetch the firewood.”
- Oilyball/Meatball “I will go to the forest.”
- Oilyball/Meatball “I won’t go to the forest to fetch firewood tomorrow. You go and I’ll stay home and cook.”

4. Put these words in the blanks below: ཉོན་མོང་བཀས་པའི་ལམ་ཐམས་ཅན་དགེ་བསོད་ནམས་བྱེད།: and, in, to, the, a.

a. Oilyball ____ Meatball were friends.
b. Oilyball was smart ____ knew how ____ cook.
c. Meatball was stupid ____ could not cook.
d. Oilyball knew his friend could not cook ____ said, “Tomorrow you go ____ ____ forest ____ fetch firewood.”
e. “I’ll stay here ___ cook.”
f. “If you would like ___ cook, I’ll go ___ forest ___ fetch ___ firewood.”
g. Meatball replied, “I will go ___ ___ forest.”
h. ___ next morning Meatball went ___ ___ forest while Oilyball cooked at home.
i. Oilyball had supper ready ___ waiting for him.
j. It was hard work ___ he was exhausted.
k. Meatball came early because he wanted ___ learn how Oilyball cooked.
l. He was surprised ___ see that Oilyball put himself ___ ___ hot pot.
m. ___ moment later supper was done.
n. Meatball thought ___ himself, “Cooking is easy.”
o. He entered ___ house ___ said, “I won’t go ___ ___ forest ___ fetch firewood tomorrow.”
p. You go ___ I’ll stay home ___ cook.”
q. ___ next day Oilyball went _____ forest while Meatball stayed.
r. When it came time ___ cook, Meatball put himself into ___ hot pot.
s. He saw his friend dead ___ ___ hot pot ___ felt sad ___ alone.

5. Write answers to these questions.

a. Who was stupid?  
   - Meatball.  
   - Oilyball.  
   - No one.

b. Who was clever?  
   - Oilyball.  
   - Meatball.

c. Did Meatball or Oilyball die?  
   - Meatball.

   - Oilyball.

   - No one.

d. Why did one friend die?  
   - Meatball died because he put himself in the hot pot.
   - Oilyball killed Meatball.
   - Meatball killed himself.
   - Meatball died accidentally.

5. Write answers to these questions.

a. Who was stupid?  
   - Meatball.  
   - Oilyball.  
   - No one.

b. Who was clever?  
   - Oilyball.  
   - Meatball.

c. Did Meatball or Oilyball die?  
   - Meatball.

   - Oilyball.

   - No one.

d. Why did one friend die?  
   - Meatball died because he put himself in the hot pot.
   - Oilyball killed Meatball.
   - Meatball killed himself.
   - Meatball died accidentally.

6. Put these sentences in the correct order.  

a. ___They ate supper together.
   - for him.

   b. ___The next day Oilyball went to the forest.
   - Oilyball felt sad and alone.

   c. ___Oilyball saw his friend dead in the hot pot.
   - Oilyball and Meatball were friends.

   d. ___Oilyball knew that his friend could not cook.
   - Meatball went to the forest while Oilyball cooked at home.

   e. ___Oilyball had supper ready and waiting for him.
   - He was very surprised to see that Oilyball put himself in the hot pot.


7. Mark these sentences T (true) or F (false).  

a. Oilyball was smart.  
   - True

   - False

b. Oilyball usually stayed at home and cooked.  
   - True

   - False

c. Oilyball killed Meatball.  
   - True

   - False

d. Meatball was smart and knew how to cook.  
   - True

   - False

e. Meatball secretly watched Oilyball.  
   - True

   - False

f. Meatball killed himself.  
   - True

   - False

g. Meatball finally wanted to cook.  
   - True

   - False
Spitting Gold and Turquoise

1. Vocabulary

- goblin: depended on 
- frog: sacrifice
- peasant: hunter
- shrank: turtle
- control

2. Text

A big lake was behind a village. Local people depended on this lake for food and water. Everything was fine until goblins came—a turtle and a frog. The frog and turtle not only controlled the lake but they also demanded a yearly sacrifice of two young men. If the people did not perform this sacrifice, the goblins would dry up the lake and the people would have to find another place to live.

One year the sacrifice was a peasant’s son and a hunter’s son. On the day of the sacrifice, their families and the townspeople took them to the lake, left the boys, and sadly returned home.

When the goblins came out of the lake, the two young men quickly hid behind a large rock. The two goblins looked for their sacrifice but could not find them. They became angry.

The hunter’s son threw a rock at the frog. The frog thought the turtle had hit him. He yelled at the turtle and soon the two were quarreling. At this time the two young men grabbed the frog and turtle by their necks. They had heard that if you used a branch from one of the lake’s tree to hit a frog’s head, when he died, you could eat him and then spit gold. They had also heard that if you used a lake rock to kill a turtle and then ate him, you would spit turquoise.

The two young men killed the turtle and the frog. After they died, the goblins quickly shrank. The peasant’s son ate the turtle, the hunter’s son ate the frog, and soon they were spitting gold and turquoise. They returned to their homes and told the story to their families and the townspeople.
3. Circle the correct word in bold. 

a. Their families and the townspeople took **they/them** to the lake.

b. The two goblins looked for **their/there** sacrifice.

c. The frog thought the turtle had hit **he/him**.

d. **He/Him** yelled at the turtle.

e. After **they/them** died, the goblins quickly shrank.
4. Put these words in the blanks below: a, an, the, and, of, to, on.

a. _____ big lake was behind _____ village.

b. Local people depended _____ this lake for food and water.

c. _____ frog _____ turtle not only controlled _____ lake but they also demanded _____ yearly sacrifice _____ two young men.

d. If _____ people did not perform this sacrifice, _____ goblins would dry up _____ lake _____ _____ people would have _____ find another place _____ live.

e. One year _____ sacrifice was _____ peasant’s son _____ _____ hunter’s son.

f. _____ _____ day _____ sacrifice, their families _____ _____ townspeople took them _____ _____ lake, left _____ boys, _____ sadly went home.

g. When _____ goblins came out _____ lake, _____ two young men quickly hid behind _____ large rock. _____ hunter’s son threw _____ rock at _____ frog.

h. _____ frog thought _____ turtle had hit him.

i. He yelled at _____ turtle and soon _____ two were quarreling.

j. _____ two young men killed _____ turtle _____ _____ frog.

k. _____ peasant’s son ate _____ turtle, _____ hunter’s son ate _____ frog, _____ soon they were spitting gold _____ turquoise.

l. They returned _____ their homes _____ told _____ story _____ their families _____ _____ townspeople.

5. Put these sentences in the correct order.

a. After they died the goblins quickly shrank.

b. Everything was fine until goblins came—a turtle and a frog.

c. If the people did not perform this sacrifice, the goblins would dry up the lake.

d. Local people depended on this lake for food and water.

e. One year the sacrifice was a peasant’s son and a hunter’s son.

f. They controlled the lake and demanded a yearly sacrifice of two young men.

g. The frog thought the turtle had hit him.

h. The hunter’s son threw a rock at the frog.

i. The two goblins looked for their sacrifice but could not find them.

j. The two young men killed the turtle and the frog.

k. You should use a branch from one of the lake’s tree to hit a frog’s head.

l. They returned to their homes and told the story to their families and the townspeople.

6. Write answers to these questions.

a. What did the local people depend on?

b. What did the goblins demand?

c. What did they control?

d. If the people didn’t perform the sacrifice, what would the goblins do?

e. Who was the sacrifice?

f. Why were the goblins angry?

g. What did the frog think the turtle did?

h. When the frog and turtle were quarreling, what did the boys do?

i. What did the boys use to kill the frog and turtle?

7. Mark these sentences T (true) or F (false).

a. The hunter’s son spit turquoise. T F

b. The peasant’s son threw a rock at the frog. T F

c. The boys hid behind a large tree. T F

d. The frog thought the turtle had hit him. T F

e. After they died, the goblins shrank. T F
1. Vocabulary

rooster རྟོིན།
naughty ཡུལ།
promised གསར་འཁྱེད།

paid attention to གཅོད་ལུང་བུ་བཅོས།
scolded རྟོིན་འཁོར་ལོ།
explaining ལོ་གཞི་འབུམའི།

continued on རུས་བུ་བཅོས།
reached ལུས་བུ།

2. Text

A young rooster was so naughty that he made his sister cry every day. When he became old enough, his mother took him to school, told him to listen to his teacher, and study hard. He promised his mother he would be a good rooster. However, he was still very naughty in school. In class, he drew pictures on his desk and never paid attention to his teacher. When his teacher scolded him, he did not care.

One time the teacher was explaining to the class what fruit was. The teacher said, “Fruit tastes good. Some fruits are red, sweet, and sour. Some fruits are found in fields.”

Rooster was very happy thinking about tasty fruit. He did not want to listen to the teacher and quietly left. He ran very fast. On his way, he met an old sheep. The old sheep asked, “Why aren’t you in school?”

“I like to run and play. Besides, it doesn’t matter if I don’t go to school,” said Rooster and continued on his way.

When he reached a field, he found some red fruits and ate them. He played in the fields until he became very tired and then he wanted to go home. He walked and walked and started to feel hungry again. He saw some red things growing in a field. He thought that they must be the tasty fruit he had enjoyed earlier in the day. He happily picked the reddest one and began eating it. All of a sudden, his mouth was terribly painful. Tears flowed from his eyes. He wept and wept. He could not speak. It was a chili and not a sweet fruit.

When he got home, he told his mother what had happened.

Rooster was never naughty again. He became a good student and paid attention in all his classes.
3. Match phrases from Part I and Part II to make correct sentences. 

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Part I</th>
<th>Part II</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. A young rooster was so naughty ___</td>
<td>1. and began eating it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. He became a good student ___</td>
<td>2. and not a sweet fruit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. He did not want to listen to ___</td>
<td>3. and paid attention in all his classes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d. He happily picked the reddest one ___</td>
<td>4. he did not care.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e. It was a chili and ___</td>
<td>5. he found some red fruits and ate them.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f. One time the teacher ___</td>
<td>6. that he made his sister cry every day.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g. When he reached a field, ___</td>
<td>7. the teacher and quietly left.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h. When his teacher scolded him, ___</td>
<td>8. was explaining to the class what fruit was.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4. Put these words in the blanks below:

- a, an, and, the, to, about, on, in, his, him.

a. ______ rooster was so naughty that he made____ sister cry every day.
b. When ______ became old enough, ______ mother took____ school, told ______ ______ listen____ teacher, ______ study hard.
c. He promised ______ mother he would be ______ good rooster.
d. However, he was still very naughty ______school.
e. ______class, he drew pictures____ _____ desk _____ never paid attention ____ teacher.
f. One time ______ teacher was explaining____ class what fruit was.
g. Rooster was very happy thinking ______ tasty fruit.
h. He did not want ______ listen ____ the teacher ____ quietly left.
i. ____ __ way, he met__ sheep. _____ sheep asked, “Why aren’t you _____ school?”
j. When he reached ______ field, he found red fruits ______ ate them.
k. He played ______ fields until he became very tired ______ then he wanted ______ go home.
l. Red things were growing ______ a field.
m. He thought that they must be ______tasty fruit he had enjoyed earlier __the day.
n. He picked ______ reddest one ______ began eating it.
o. All of ___ sudden, ______ mouth was terribly painful.
p. Tears flowed from _______ eyes.
q. It was______ chili ______ not______ fruit.
r. He told ______ mother what had happened.

5. Write answers to these questions.

a. What did the rooster promise his mother?
b. What did he do in class?
c. Did he pay attention to the teacher?
d. When the teacher was explaining what tasty fruit was, what did the rooster do?
e. After he left class, who did the rooster meet?
f. What did he first eat?
g. What did he do after he ate the tasty fruits?
h. What did the rooster see growing in the field?
i. What were they actually?
j. What happened to him?
k. After eating the chilies, what did the rooster promise his mother?

6. What lesson does this story teach?

a. You should be naughty.
b. You should pay attention to your teacher.
c. You should behave and listen to your elders.
d. You should eat red fruits.
1. Vocabulary སླིབས

juniper tree (pine, cedar, conifer, evergreen) རྡུ་སྐྱོང།

as time passed ནས་ཀྱི་ཐོབ་སྟེ། branch རྩོང་

worth རྡུ་སྐྱོང་ཐོབ། bundles རྩོང་བུལ། exchanged རྩོང་

You tricked me! རྡུ་སྐྱོང་བུལ། home was bathed in sunshine བྱུང་པ་བུལ།

2. Text རྩོམ་སློབ

Uncle Dunba’s neighbor planted a juniper tree near Uncle Dunba’s window. As time passed, the tree grew bigger and bigger while Uncle Dunba’s home became darker and darker.

Uncle Dunba decided that he must do something, broke a branch off the tree, and then went to his neighbor’s home. When the neighbor saw Uncle Dunba holding the branch he asked, “Where are you going with that juniper branch?”

Uncle Dunba replied, “A trader is coming to town today. He is buying juniper branches. I am going to sell it to him. One branch is worth one hundred yuan.”

The neighbor said, “I have a tall juniper tree with many branches. I’ll sell it to him and earn a lot of money.”

Uncle Dunba said, “True. You probably will get a lot of money. But you’d better hurry because he won’t be in town long.”

His neighbor quickly cut down the tree, cut off all the branches, tied them together in bundles, loaded the bundles on a horse, and led it to town. But when he got there he couldn’t find any trader willing to give him a large amount of money for his juniper branches. Finally, he exchanged all the branches for a donkey.

When he got back he angrily went to Uncle Dunba’s home and angrily said, “You tricked me! There was no juniper dealer in town!”

Uncle Dunba said, “I didn’t trick you. I told you he wouldn’t be in town for long.”

 Afterwards, sunshine bathed Uncle Dunba’s home.
3. Each sentence below has one mistake. Write the word that is incorrect and a correct word to replace it.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sentence</th>
<th>Wrong Word</th>
<th>Right Word</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Uncle Dunba’s mother planted a juniper tree near Uncle Dunba’s window.</td>
<td>a juniper tree</td>
<td>A juniper tree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uncle Dunba decided that he must do anything.</td>
<td>do anything</td>
<td>be done</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“Where are you going with them juniper branch?”</td>
<td>the</td>
<td>a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“A trader is coming from town today.</td>
<td>from</td>
<td>in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“I have a tall conifer tree with many leaves.”</td>
<td>conifer</td>
<td>coniferous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“But you’d better run because he won’t be in town long.”</td>
<td>you’d</td>
<td>you will</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>His neighbor quickly cut up the tree.</td>
<td>cut up</td>
<td>cut down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Finally, he exchanged all the branches for a yak.</td>
<td>branches</td>
<td>branch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“There was no juniper dealer on town!”</td>
<td>was</td>
<td>were</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“I did trick you.”</td>
<td>trick</td>
<td>tricked</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4. Put these sentences in the correct order.

a. Uncle Dunba decided that he must do something and broke a branch off the tree.
b. Uncle Dunba replied, “A trader is coming to town today.
c. Uncle Dunba said, “True.
d. Uncle Dunba said, “I didn’t trick you. I told you he wouldn’t be in town for long.”
e. Uncle Dunba’s neighbor planted a juniper tree near Uncle Dunba’s window.
f. Afterwards, sunshine bathed Uncle Dunba’s home.
g. The tree grew bigger and bigger while Uncle Dunba’s home became darker and darker.
h. He couldn’t find traders willing to give him much money for his juniper branches.
i. But you’d better hurry because he won’t be in town long.”
j. Finally, he exchanged all the branches for a donkey.
k. He is buying juniper branches.
l. His neighbor cut down the tree, cut off all the branches and tied them together.
m. I am going to sell it to him.
n. I’ll sell it to him and earn a lot of money.”
o. One branch is worth one hundred yuan.”
p. The neighbor said, “I have a tall conifer tree with many branches.
q. There was no juniper dealer in town!”
r. He angrily went to Uncle Dunba’s home and angrily said, “You tricked me!
s. The neighbor saw Uncle Dunba holding the branch.
t. You probably will get a lot of money.
5. Write answers to these questions.

a. Who planted a juniper tree?

b. Where was the juniper tree planted?

c. Why was Uncle Dunba unhappy?

d. Why did Uncle Dunba break a branch off the tree?

e. What story did Uncle Dunba tell his neighbor?

f. Why did Uncle Dunba’s neighbor cut down his juniper tree?

g. How did Uncle Dunba’s neighbor get a donkey?

h. Who was tricked?

i. How was he tricked?

j. Why was Uncle Dunba’s home bathed in sunlight?

6. Write questions for these statements.

a. Uncle Dunba’s neighbor planted a tree near Uncle Dunba’s home. (Where)

b. Uncle Dunba broke a branch off the tree. (What)

c. Uncle Dunba tricked his neighbor. (Who)

d. Uncle Dunba’s home was now bathed in sunlight. (When)
In one place, people did not know what they looked like because there were no mirrors.

Zhaxi was a local businessman who lived with his mother, father, and young wife. One day Zhaxi announced to his family that he had decided to travel to other lands and find special things to sell. His family supported this idea and he left the next day.

Several months later Zhaxi returned with many things that he had bought during his travels. He told his family about the journey and said that he had found something very special. Just as he was about to describe what it was, he had to go outside.

His wife went into their bedroom and noticed something bright on their bedroom table. When she looked at it, she realized it was the picture of a beautiful young woman. She put it back on the table, began weeping, ran to her mother-in-law, and told her Zhaxi had married a beautiful young woman.

The old woman did not believe this, impatiently went to the bedroom, picked up the bright thing, looked at it, and saw an ugly old woman. She angrily wondered, “If Zhaxi married again, why did he marry such an ugly old woman?”

When she told her husband, he went into the bedroom, picked up the bright thing, looked at it, and saw an old man. He excitedly reported to his wife and daughter-in-law that the picture was actually of the new wife’s father-in-law.

When Zhaxi returned he said, “Now I will show you the very special thing I found. It is a mirror and you can see yourself in it.”

When his family members heard this, they all laughed.
3. Put these words in the blanks below: a, an, at, and, the, in, on, of, to, with, into, outside.

a. ______ one place, there were no mirrors.

b. Zhaxi was ______ businessman who lived ______ his mother, father, ______ young wife.

c. Zhaxi announced ______ his family that he had decided ______ travel ______ other lands ______ find special things ______ sell.

d. Later Zhaxi returned ______ many things.

e. Just as he was about ______ describe what it was, he had ______ go ________.

f. His wife went ______ their bedroom ______ noticed something bright ______ their bedroom table.

g. When she looked ______ it, she realized it was ______ picture ___________ beautiful woman.

h. ______ old woman did not believe this, impatiently went ______ the bedroom, picked up the bright thing, looked ______ it, ___ saw ______ ugly old woman.
4. Each verb in bold is in the present tense. Change these verbs to the past tense.

a. Zhaxi is a local businessman who lives with his mother, father, and young wife.
b. His wife goes into their bedroom and notices something bright on their bedroom table.
c. She put it back on the table, begins to weep, runs to her mother-in-law, and tells her that Zhaxi is married to a beautiful young woman.
d. The old woman does not believe this, impatiently goes to the bedroom, picks up the bright thing, looks at it, and sees an ugly old woman.
e. He reports to his wife and daughter-in-law that the picture is of the new wife’s father-in-law.

5. Write answers to these questions.

a. What did Zhaxi announce to his family?  
b. Did his family agree with this idea?  
c. When did Zhaxi return?  
d. Who did the wife think was in the picture?  
e. Who did the mother think was in the picture?  
f. Who did the father think was in the picture?

6. Put these sentences in the correct order.

a. ____ He reported to his wife and daughter-in-law that the picture was actually of the new wife’s father-in-law.
b. ____ He told his family about the journey and said that he found something very special.
c. ____ Just as he was about to describe what it was, he had to go outside.
d. ____ One day Zhaxi announced to his family that he had decided to travel to other lands and find special things to sell.
e. ____ Several months later Zhaxi returned with many things that he had bought during his travels.
f. ____ She angrily wondered, “If Zhaxi married again, why did he marry such an ugly old woman?”
g. ____ She put it back on the table, began weeping, ran to her mother-in-law, and told her that Zhaxi had married a beautiful young woman.
h. ____ When his family members heard this, they all laughed.
i. ____ When she told her husband, he went into the bedroom, picked up the bright thing, looked at, and saw an old man.
j. ____ When Zhaxi returned he said, “Now I will show you the very special thing I found. It is a mirror and you can see yourself in it.”
k. ____ Zhaxi was a local businessman who lived with his mother, father, and young wife.
The King and the Pork

1. Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>pork</th>
<th>obey</th>
<th>nobody</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| བཏགས  | བོད་ | གྷེ་རབ་
| boil | tiny | skin |
| རྩོབ | རྟོགས་ | རྟོགས་ |
| left | at a loss | flavorless |
| ལུགས | གྷྲག་མ་ཞིབས་ | རློབ་སྟེང་ |

2. Text

A servant to the King named Nuqusangbu killed the King’s biggest pig. Then he went to the King and said, “Great King, our biggest pig died. What should we do with the body?”

The King said, “Clean the pig’s body, go to the market, and sell the meat. Give me all the money you earn.”

Nuqusangbu obeyed and went to the market where he shouted, “Buy the dead meat of a dead pig!” He shouted all day but nobody bought the meat. He took the pork and returned to the King.

“Forgive me, great King, no one bought the pork,” said Nuqusangbu.

“Well, just boil it and we’ll eat it ourselves,” said the King.

“Great King, do you want soup or meat?” asked Nuqusangbu.

“Of course I eat meat. I am a great king. You are servants so you should drink the soup,” the King said.

Nuqusangbu cut a large piece of pork into tiny pieces and boiled them a long time. All that was left of the meat was the skin. Nuqusangbu and the other servants drank the soup and sent the skin to the King. “Sorry, great King, we boiled the meat too long. This is all that is left,” said Nuqusangbu.

“Well, bring me the soup,” said the King.

“Oh, sorry, we drank all of the soup,” said Nuqusangbu. The King was at a loss and said nothing.

The next night the King said to Nuqusangbu, “This time I will drink the soup. You can eat the meat.” This time Nuqusangbu boiled another large piece of pork for only a few minutes. The servants then ate the meat while the King drank the flavorless soup.
“Great King, do you want soup or meat?” asked Nuqusangbu.

“Of course I eat meat. I am a king,” the King said.

“Well, just boil it and we’ll eat it ourselves,” said the King.

A servant to the King named Nuqusangbu killed the King’s biggest pig.

All that was left of the meat was the skin.

He shouted all day but nobody bought the meat.

He took the pork and returned to the King.

Nuqusangbu and the other servants drank the soup and sent the skin to the King.

Nuqusangbu cut a large piece of pork into tiny pieces and boiled them a long time.

The King said, “Clean the pig’s body, go to the market, and sell the meat.”

The King said to Nuqusangbu, “This time I will drink the soup. You eat the meat.”

The servants then ate the meat while the King drank the flavorless soup.

3. Put these sentences in the correct order. ཐོག རྒྱ་འབྲིང་བའི་ཐོག ཀྲུན་པོ་སྐད་
4. Put these words in the blanks below: a, and, of, the, to.

a. ____ servant _____ _____ King named Nuqusangbu killed _____ King’s biggest pig.
b. He went _____ _____ King ____ said, “Great King, our biggest pig died.”
c. “What should we do with _____ body?”
d. ____ King said, “Clean ____ pig’s body, go ___ ____ market, ___ sell ______ meat.”
e. “Give me all ______ money you earn.”
f. He shouted all day but nobody bought ____ meat.
g. He took ___ pork _____ returned ______ _____ King.
h. Nuqusangbu cut _____ large piece _____ pork into pieces _____ boiled them _____ long time.
i. All that was left _____ _____ meat was _____ skin.
j. Nuqusangbu ___ ____ other servants drank ___ soup _____ sent _____ skin _____ _____ King.
k. ____ next night ____ King said ____ Nuqusangbu, “This time I will drink ____ soup.”
l. “You can eat ______ meat.”
m. This time Nuqusangbu boiled another large piece _____ pork for only _____ few minutes.

5. Write answers to these questions.

a. Who killed the King’s biggest pig?  
b. What did he tell the King?
c. What did the King tell him to do with the pig?  
d. What did he shout at the market?  
e. Who bought the meat?  
f. How did Nuqusangbu cook the meat the first time?  
g. What did the servants eat the first night?  
h. What did the King eat the first night?  
i. What did the King want to eat the next night?  
j. What did the servants eat the second night?

6. Correct the words in bold.

a. A servant to the King name Nuqusangbu kill the King’s biggest pig.
b. Nuqusangbu obey and go to the market.
c. He take the pork and return to the King.
d. “Forgave me, great King, no one buy the pork,” say Nuqusangbu.
e. Nuqusangbu cut a large piece of pork into tiny pieces and boiling them a long time.
f. All that am left of the meat were the skin.
g. Nuqusangbu and the other servants drinking the soup and sended the skin to the King.
h. The servants then eating the meat while the King dranks the flavorless soup.

7. Mark these sentences T (true) or F (false).

a. The King’s biggest pig died. T F  
b. The King was given a flavorful soup. T F  
c. The servants ate a large piece of pork. T F  
d. Nuqusangbu sold the pork. T F  
e. The King ate a lot of good meat. T F
Half a Baby?

1. Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Tibetan</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tortoise</td>
<td>མིག་མིག་</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gave birth to</td>
<td>ཤེས་བདེ་ཤེས་འགྲེལ་བའི།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>switch</td>
<td>ཉེས་</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sadly</td>
<td>དབྱངས་ཨེལ།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pointed to</td>
<td>ཤེས་</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut it in two</td>
<td>ཤེས་བདེ་ཤེས་འགྲེལ་བ་</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>increasingly believed</td>
<td>ཤེས་བདེ་ཤེས་འགྲེལ་བའི་</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Tortoise and Bird were fishing when both gave birth to boys.

Several days later Bird had something to do and asked Tortoise to tend her son. Tortoise agreed.

As the days passed, she increasingly believed that her son was uglier than Bird’s son. She decided to switch the two sons.

When Bird returned she saw Tortoise’s son lying in her bed and her son lying in Tortoise’s bed. She asked Tortoise, “Why did you put your son in my bed and put my son in your bed?”

Tortoise said, “I didn’t. That’s really your son. How can you ask me this sort of question?”

Bird sadly went looking for the king of the forest—Tiger. When she found him, she told him what had happened.

Tiger said, “I will help you. Now, let’s go,” and the two set off.

When they reached Tortoise and Bird’s home, Tiger asked Tortoise, “Which baby is yours?” Tortoise pointed to Baby Bird in her bed.

Bird said, “No, that’s my baby,” and then Tortoise and Bird began quarrelling.

Tiger interrupted, “I don’t know who to believe. Give the baby to me. I will cut it in two and give each of you a half.”

Tortoise nodded in agreement. Bird sadly said, “No, don’t cut the baby. If you don’t know who the mother is, please give this baby to Tortoise.”

Tiger smiled, took Baby Bird from Tortoise’s bed, and gave it to Bird.

He said to Tortoise, “No mother would ever agree to cut her baby in half.”
3. Put these words in the blanks below: a, the, and, of, to, in, for.

a. Tortoise _____ Bird were fishing when both gave birth _____ boys.
b. Several days later Bird had something ____ do ____ asked Tortoise to tend her son.
c. As _____ days passed, she believed that her son was uglier than Bird’s son.
d. Bird saw Tortoise’s son lying _____ her bed _____ her son lying _____Tortoise’s bed.
e. Bird went looking _____ _____ king _____ _____ forest—Tiger.
g. Tortoise pointed _____ Baby Bird _____ her bed.
h. Bird said, “No, that’s my baby,” _____ then Tortoise _____ Bird began quarrelling.
i. Tiger interrupted, “I don’t know who _____ believe.”
j. “Give _____ baby _____ me.”
k. “I will cut it _____ two _____ give each _____ you _____ half.”
l. Tortoise nodded _____ agreement.
m. Tiger smiled, took Baby Bird from Tortoise’s bed, _____ gave it _____ Bird.
n. He said _____ Tortoise, “No mother would ever agree _____ cut her baby _____ half.”

4. Put these sentences in the correct order.

a. ___ She increasingly believed that her son was uglier than Bird’s son.
b. ___ Bird sadly went looking for the king of the forest—Tiger.
c. ___ Bird said, “No, that’s my baby,” and then Tortoise and Bird began quarrelling.
d. ___ He said to Tortoise, “No mother would ever agree to cut her baby in half.”
e. ___ Several days later Bird had something to do and asked Tortoise to tend her son.
f. ___ She decided to switch the two sons.
g. ___ Tiger interrupted, “I will cut the baby in two.”
h. ___ Tiger said, “I will help you. Now, let’s go,” and the two set off.
i. ___ Tiger smiled, took Baby Bird from Tortoise’s bed, and gave it to Bird.

j. ___ Tortoise and Bird were fishing when both gave birth to boys.

k. ___ Tortoise nodded in agreement.”

l. ___ When Bird returned she saw Tortoise’s son lying in her bed.

m. ___ She found him and told him what had happened.

n. ___ Tiger asked Tortoise, “Which baby is yours?”

5. Write answers to these questions.

a. What were Tortoise and Bird doing when they gave birth?

b. Who believed her son was ugly?

c. Who switched the babies?

d. Who did Bird go looking for?

e. What did the King of the forest say he would do to the baby?

f. Why did the King of the forest give the baby back to Bird?

6. Find words. The words may be spelled up ↑, down ↓, forward →, backward ←, and diagonally ↘.

NEA Cool DET NIO PTD
SURT BROKENAI NOE
EASTILLUSINTIEDV
VIARDSUHIWSTMEDE
ALDROTOHEROKBSEEI
GYSHPINFOREDL
XICYUTITNIOWTRIE
INCREASINGLYSGBN
YGDETPURRETNIAOE
The Boy Who Cried “Wolf!”

1. Vocabulary

- flock
- to graze
- deceived
- covered

- to keep his sheep safe
- plowing
- knocking them to the ground
- horrible sight

2. Text

A village boy tended a flock of sheep. He loved them very much and would do anything to keep his sheep safe. One warm spring day the boy took his sheep to graze in the mountains. He could not see any other boys or other sheep anywhere. He was alone and he did not like it. He put some lambs by his side and played with them but soon he became bored. There was no one to talk to and he was beginning to feel sad.

Suddenly he had an idea. He stood up, looked around, and saw some farmers busy plowing fields at the foot of the mountain. He shouted, “Farmers! A wild wolf is coming towards my sheep. It will eat all my sheep! Please come quickly and save my sheep!”

The farmers were surprised. They stopped working and ran up the hill with sticks to beat the wolf. When they arrived, all the sheep were safe. They realized the boy had deceived them. The farmers were angry and wanted to scold the boy, but he was hiding and they could not find him so they returned to their fields.

At sunset the boy felt something was wrong. He heard a very strange sound. “I’ve heard this sound before,” he told himself. At first, he thought it was a yak and then he realized it was a wolf.

He was too frightened to stand. He saw a wolf run in and out of his flock of sheep, knocking them to the ground. The wolf killed the sheep with sharp bites to their necks.

The boy was very sad to see the wolf killing all his sheep. He stood and shouted at the farmers for help, but they did not believe him.

Blood from his dead sheep covered the ground. It was such a horrible sight that the boy never lied again.
Suddenly he had _____ idea.

There was no one _____ talk _____ he was beginning_____ feel sad.

3. Put these words in the blanks below: a, and, an, at, by, in, of, the, to, with up.

a. _____ village boy tended _____ flock _____ sheep.
b. One warm spring day _____ boy took his sheep _____ graze ____ the mountains.
c. He was alone _____ he did not like it.
d. He put some lambs _____ his side _____ played ______ them but soon he became bored.
e. There was no one _____ talk _____ _____ he was beginning____ feel sad.
f. Suddenly he had _____ idea.
g. He stood ___, looked around, ___ saw farmers busy plowing fields ___ __ foot ___ mountain.
h. He shouted, “_____ wild wolf is coming!”
i. “Please come quickly _____ save my sheep!”
j. _____ farmers were surprised.
k. They stopped working _____ ran _____ ____ hill _____ sticks _____ beat _____ wolf.
l. When they arrived, all _____ sheep were safe.
m. They realized_____ boy had deceived them.
n. _____ farmers were angry _____ wanted _____ scold _____ boy, but he was hiding _____ they could not find him so they returned _____ their fields.
o. _____sunset _____ boy felt something was wrong.
p. He heard _____ very strange sound.

4. Write answers to these questions.

a. Did the boy like being alone?
b. What was the boy’s idea?
c. What did the farmers do when they heard the boy shouting?
d. When they found out he had tricked them, what did they do?
e. At sunset what did the boy hear?
f. What was the strange sound?
g. Did anyone help the boy?
h. What did the boy decide never to do again?

5. Mark these sentences T (true) or F (false).

a. The village boy tended a flock of yaks. T F
b. He liked to be alone. T F
c. The first time he called to the farmers, they came quickly. T F
d. The farmers were happy to be deceived by the boy. T F
e. When they went looking for him, they found him. T F
f. The boy never lied again. T F
6. Circle the correct word.

a. He loved they/them very much.
b. He put some lambs by her/his side and played with them/they but soon she/he became bored.
c. They realized the boy had deceived they/them.
d. He was hiding and they could not find her/him so they returned to their fields.
e. He saw a wolf run in and out of his/her flock of sheep, knocking they/them to the ground.
f. The wolf killed the sheep with sharp bites to their/there necks.

7. What lesson does this story teach?

a. Lying is a good thing to do.
b. Lying will get you into trouble.
c. Being alone is very nice.
d. Telling the truth is a bad thing.
**Monkey, Rabbit, Fox, and Horse**

1. **Vocabulary**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hindi</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Hindi</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>चिड़िया</td>
<td>Fox</td>
<td>रस्मीता राजस्थानी</td>
<td>Refused</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>दीनदया</td>
<td>Delighted</td>
<td>गल्ला चढ़ाया</td>
<td>Galloped off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>धूर्चुर्चा</td>
<td>Dragging</td>
<td>दृष्टि देखा</td>
<td>These</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>तिल्कितो</td>
<td>Bottom</td>
<td>सुपर्ब</td>
<td>Cleft lip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>बगलकितो</td>
<td>Messy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. **Text**

Monkey, **Rabbit**, and Fox lived together and always did things together.

**Whenever** Fox found something to eat, he **refused** to share it with friends.

One day Monkey and Rabbit were in a forest looking for something to eat. They noticed a horse sleeping under a tree. Clever Rabbit said, “Fox never shares food with us. Why don’t we tell Fox about this horse? He likes horse meat so he’ll ask us to show him where it is.”

Monkey and Rabbit returned home and told Fox about the horse. Fox was **delighted** to hear this and asked Monkey and Rabbit to take him to the sleeping horse.

When they reached the place where the horse was sleeping, Rabbit said, “Tie your **tail** and the horse’s tail together. When you bite him he will run but with your tails tied together he can’t get away from you.”

Fox agreed that this was a **superb** idea and Rabbit quietly tied their tails together.

Monkey climbed up the tree the horse was sleeping under and Rabbit stood behind it.

Fox bit the horse’s leg. The horse jumped up and **galloped off**, **dragging** Fox behind him.

Monkey and Rabbit laughed at the **sight of** the horse dragging Fox.

Monkey laughed so hard that he fell from the tree and **landed on his butt**. That is why, today, monkeys have a red **bottom**.

Rabbit saw Monkey fall from the tree and laughed so hard that he **bit through** his lip. That is why, today, rabbits have a **cleft lip**.

The horse pulled Fox in the dirt and that is why, today, foxes have **messy** hair.
3. Match phrases from Part I and Part II to make correct sentences.

Part I

a. Fox agreed that this was a superb idea ____  b. Monkey and Rabbit laughed at ____

c. Monkey and Rabbit returned home ____  d. Monkey climbed up the tree ____

e. Monkey laughed so hard ____  f. Monkey, Rabbit, and Fox lived together ____

g. One day Monkey and Rabbit were ____  h. The horse jumped up and galloped off, ____

i. They noticed a horse ____  j. Whenever Fox found something to eat, ____

k. Rabbit saw Monkey fall from the tree and laughed so hard ____
PART II

1. and always did things together.  
2. and Rabbit tied their tails together.  
3. and told Fox about the horse.  
4. dragging Fox behind him.  
5. he refused to share it with friends.  
6. in a forest looking for something to eat.  
7. sleeping under a tree.  
8. that he bit through his lip.  
9. the sight of the horse dragging Fox.  
10. that he fell from the tree and landed on his butt.  
11. the horse was sleeping under and Rabbit stood behind it.

4. Put these words in the blanks below: a, and, for, from, in, the, to, under, with.

a. Monkey, Rabbit, _____ Fox lived together _____ always did things together.
b. Whenever Fox found something _____ eat, he refused _____ share it _____ friends.
c. Monkey _____ Rabbit were _____ _____ forest looking _____ something _____ eat.
d. They noticed _____ horse sleeping _____ _____ tree.
e. Clever Rabbit said, “Fox never shares food _____ us.”
f. “He’ll ask us _____ show him where it is.”
g. Monkey _____ Rabbit returned home _____ told Fox about the horse.
h. Fox was delighted _____ hear this _____ asked Monkey _____ Rabbit _____ take him _____ _____ sleeping horse.
i. When they reached _____ place where _____ horse was sleeping, Rabbit said, “Tie your tail _____ _____ horse’s tail together.”
j. “He will run but _____ your tails tied together he can’t get away _____ you.”

5. Mark these sentences T (true) or F (false).

a. Fox shared his food with his friends.  T F
b. Fox thought Rabbit had a good idea.  T F
c. Monkey landed on his butt.  T F
d. Rabbit was pulled by the horse in the dirt.  T F
e. Fox tied his tail and the horse’s tail together.  T F
1. Vocabulary

a tent pitched in a beautiful canyon  རྣ་ཐེབས་ཞེན་པའི་གཅིག་གཞུང་།
surrounded རྫོ་དྲུག
looked after རྒྱུ་ཁ་བཞི་
Let’s send her away  སྦྱོར་བྱེད་ལོ།
understandingly སྨིན་ཏིང་ཞེས་
herded livestock སྦྱོར་བཞི་
cruel ལྷོག
chest རློང་
well enough to work བྱ།ཐེབས་དགེ་བརྟེན་་
A tent pitched in a beautiful canyon between two low mountains was surrounded by green trees and red, yellow, blue, white, and purple flowers. Four people lived in this tent—Zhaxi, his wife Lhamo, his son Cairang, and his mother Zhuma. Zhaxi’s mother was ninety while his son was only seven.

Zhaxi herded livestock on the mountains, Lhamo did housework and milked yaks, and Zhuma looked after Cairang.

While Zhuma was well enough to work, Zhaxi and his wife were very kind to her. When she became very old and could no longer work, Zhaxi and his wife became cruel to her. Zhaxi’s wife did not like to do anything for her mother-in-law, tried to make her angry, and she hoped that she would die soon.

One day Lhamo said to Zhaxi, “Mother is very old and can’t do anything for us. Let’s send her away.”

Zhaxi said, “You’re right. I agree.” They took a rope and tied Zhuma’s hands and feet together, put a piece of cloth in her mouth, put her in a chest, and carried the chest to a mountaintop. Cairang followed them. When they reached the mountaintop they took Zhuma out of the chest and then they started back home. Zhuma smiled understandingly and said, “Now your life will be better than before.”

As they were walking home Cairang said, “I’m going back to get the chest.” His parents asked, “Why do you want that old chest?”

Cairang answered, “When you become very old I will also use that chest to do what you just did.” This frightened his parents so much that they went back to the mountaintop, brought Zhuma back to their home, and they were very kind to her afterwards.
3. Match phrases from Part I and Part II to make correct sentences.

**PART I**

a. As they were walking home Cairang ___
b. Cairang answered, “When you become ___
c. Cairang followed ___
d. When they reached the mountain ___
e. His parents asked, “Why do you ___
f. Zhuma smiled understandingly and ___
g. They took a rope and tied ___
h. They went back to the mountaintop ___
i. This frightened ___

**PART II**

1. and brought Lhamo back to their home.
2. his parents very much.
3. said, “I’m going back to get the chest.”
4. said, “Your life will be better.”
5. them.
6. top they took Zhuma out of the chest.
7. old I will do what you just did.”
8. want that old chest?”
9. Zhuma’s hands and feet together.

4. Put these words in the blanks below: a, and, for, in, to.

a. _____ tent pitched ______ beautiful canyon between two mountains was surrounded by trees _____ red, yellow, blue, white, _____ purple flowers.

b. Four people lived _____ this tent—Zhaxi, his wife Lhamo, his son Cairang, _____ his mother Zhuma.

c. Zhaxi herded livestock _____ the mountains, Lhamo did housework _____ milked yaks, _____ Zhuma looked after Cairang.

d. While Zhuma was well enough _____ work, Zhaxi _____ his wife were very kind _____ her.

e. When she became old ____ could no longer work, Zhaxi _____ his wife became cruel _____ her.

f. Zhaxi’s wife did not like _____ do anything _____ her mother- _____ -law, tried _____ make her angry, _____ she hoped that she would die soon.

g. Lhamo said _____ Zhaxi, “Mother is very old _____ can’t do anything _____ us.”
5. Match the characters in the story in Part I with the phrases in Part II.

**PART I**

a. Zhaxi ____
b. Lhamo ____
c. Cairang ____
e. Zhuma ____

**PART II**

(1) was cruel to Zhuma.
(2) was a child.
(3) was Zhuma’s daughter-in-law.
(4) was Cairang’s grandmother.
(5) was very old.
(6) she was left on a mountaintop.
(7) wanted to go back and get the chest.
(8) were very frightened by what the boy said.
(9) had a happy life in the end.
(10) did not die on the mountain.
(11) was Lhamo’s husband.
(12) was Zhaxi’s wife.

6. Write answers to these questions.

a. How many people are in this story?
b. How many mothers are in this story?
c. How many grandmothers are in this story?
d. How many sons are in this story?
e. How many fathers are in this story?
f. Why did they take Zhuma to the mountain?
g. Why did they bring her back to their home?

7. What lesson does this story teach?

a. Children should be kind to their old parents.
b. Old people are not useful.
c. Young children are not clever.
d. Don’t be unkind to your children.
A Wolf Wags His Tail  (ལེགས་པ་ལེགས་བུ་མོ་)

1. Vocabulary

caught in a trap རྟགས་བབས།
feigned sincerity རྣམ་ཐོས་བཤེེས།
my own safety གསུས་དེ་ཡང་།
impatient འགྲེལ་ཟོས།
leered ལེ་རེ།
fangs མདོ་རྒྱུ།

2. Text

A n old sheep slowly walked over to a wolf that was caught in a trap. Wolf said, “Good friend! Please help me.”

Sheep said, “Who are you? Why are you caught in this hunter’s trap?”

Wolf feigned sincerity and said, “You don’t know who I am? I am a loyal dog. I was caught as I was rescuing a chicken caught in this trap. I never think of my own safety. I jumped into the trap and now I cannot get out. Please help a kind old dog.”

Sheep looked at Wolf for a long time. He did not believe him. He said, “Are you really a dog? Why do you look like a wolf?”

Wolf said, “I am a wolf dog, so I look like a wolf. Please believe me. I’m really a dog. I’m kind and gentle. Moreover, I can wag my tail. Look, I am wagging my tail.”

Sheep took a step back and said, “Yes, you can wag your tail but not all animals that can wag their tails are dogs. Are you really a dog?”

“Yes, I swear it. Please help me. I will work for you. I like sheep very much and I like old sheep the best,” said impatient Wolf.

Sheep hesitated and said, “No, I need to think it over.”

Wolf lost his patience, leered horribly at the old sheep, and yelled, “Old friend, quickly! Are you going to help me or not?”

The old sheep soberly looked at Wolf and slowly said, “Never! You are a wolf. I saw your fangs. Last winter you tried your best to catch and eat me. I almost died. I will never forget that. You can wag your tail but you cannot deceive me. Goodbye!”

The old sheep then left Wolf in the trap and went on his way.
བུད་ཀྱི་སེམས་དཔའི་ཤེས་བསྡུས་བསྤུ་ཞིང།

བུད། བསྐུ་དིང་ལྷོ་བརྙན་པོ་སེམས་དཔའི་སོགས་གཏོང་།

བུད་ཀྱི་ཤེས་དཔའི་ཤེས་བསྡུས་བསྤུ་ཞིང་།

བུད། བསྐུ་དིང་ལྷོ་བརྙན་པོ་སེམས་དཔའི་སོགས་གཏོང་།

བུད་ཀྱི་སེམས་དཔའི་ཤེས་བསྡུས་བསྤུ་ཞིང་།

བུད། བསྐུ་དིང་ལྷོ་བརྙན་པོ་སེམས་དཔའི་སོགས་གཏོང་།

བུད། བསྐུ་དིང་ལྷོ་བརྙན་པོ་སེམས་དཔའི་སོགས་གཏོང་།

100
3. Put the sentences in the correct order.

a. “I like sheep very much and I like old sheep the best,” said Wolf. ___
b. An old sheep slowly walked over to a wolf. ___
c. He did not believe him. ___
d. He said, “Are you really a dog? Why do you look like a wolf?” ___
e. Sheep hesitated and said, “No, I need to think it over.” ___
f. Sheep looked at Wolf for a long time. ___
g. Sheep said, “Who are you? Why are you caught in this hunter’s trap?” ___
h. Sheep took a step back and said, “Yes, you can wag your tail.” ___
i. The old sheep slowly said, “Never! You are a wolf. Goodbye!” ___
j. The old sheep then left Wolf in the trap and went on his way. ___
k. Wolf feigned sincerity and said, “You don’t know who I am? I am a loyal dog.” ___
l. Wolf lost his patience and yelled, “Old friend, are you going to help me?” ___
m. Wolf said, “Good friend! Please help me.” ___
n. Wolf said, “I am a wolf dog, so I look like a wolf. I can wag my tail.” ___

4. Put these words in the blanks below.

a. ____ old sheep slowly walked over____ _____wolf that was caught _____ _____ trap.
b. Sheep said, “Who are you? Why are you caught ______ this hunter’s trap?”
c. Wolf feigned sincerity _____ said, “I am ______ loyal dog.”
d. “I was caught as I was rescuing _____ chicken caught _____ this trap.”
e. “I never think _____ my own safety.”
f. “I jumped _______ _____ trap _____ now I cannot get _____.”
g. “Please help _____ kind old dog.”
h. Sheep looked____ Wolf____ _____ long time.
i. He said, “Are you really _____ dog?”
j. “Why do you look like ______ wolf?”
k. Wolf said, “I am ______ wolf dog, so I look like _____ wolf.”
l. “I’m really _____ dog.”
m. Sheep took _____ step back.

5. Write answers to these questions.

a. Who was caught in the trap?
b. What did Wolf say he was?
c. Why was he caught in the trap?
d. What did Wolf wag?
e. What did Wolf say he liked very much?
f. Did Sheep help the wolf? Why or why not?
A poor woman lived with her clever son. One day when a rich man came to their home, the mother said to her son, “Please cook enough for our guest to eat.” The son put a single grain of rice in the pot and prepared to go to the kitchen to cook it.

The rich man was very surprised and said, “You only put one grain of rice in the pot. That is not enough for me to eat.”

The son said, “Don’t worry. Just wait.” The rich man said nothing and the clever son went into the kitchen to cook. When the rice was cooked, the son came out of the kitchen with the pot, scooped rice out of the pot, filled a bowl with the rice, and respectfully placed it in front of the rich man.

The rich man asked in surprise, “How did you get an entire bowl of rice from a single grain?”

The woman answered, “It is a treasure pot. If you cook one grain of rice in it you will get a bowlful.”

The woman’s son asked, “Did you clean it?”

The rich man answered, “Yes, because it was dirty.”

The woman’s son answered, “This pot can’t be cleaned. Once you clean it, it becomes like any other pot.”

The rich man said nothing and sadly returned home.
3. Match phrases from Part I and Part II to make correct sentences.

Part I

| a. ___ A poor woman lived | g. ___ The rich man wanted |
| b. ___ After he washed it, he put a single grain of rice inside, | h. ___ The rich man was very angry, rushed back to the woman’s home, |
| c. ___ After the rich man paid for the pot and took it home, | i. ___ The son put a single grain of rice in the pot |
| d. ___ The rich man asked in surprise, “How did you get an | j. ___ The son said, “Don’t worry. |
| e. ___ The rich man said nothing | k. ___ The woman answered, “It is a treasure pot. |
| f. ___ The rich man said nothing and | If you cook one grain |

Part II

1. and prepared to go the kitchen to cook it. |
2. and sadly returned home. |
3. and told her what had happened. |
4. covered it, and cooked it for a long time. |
5. entire bowl of rice from a single grain?” |
6. he found that it was very dirty inside. |

4. Put these words in the blanks below: enough, grain of rice, in surprise, nothing, offered, only, paid for, refused, respectfully, scooped out, treasure.

| a. The rich man ______ the pot and took it home. | g. ___ The rich man wanted |
| b. The woman ______ but, when the rich man ______ her two hundred pieces of silver, she agreed. | h. ___ The rich man was very angry, rushed back to the woman’s home, |
| c. The mother said to her son, “Please cook ______ for our guest to eat.” | i. ___ The son put a single grain of rice in the pot |
| d. The rich man asked ________, “How did you get an entire bowl of rice from a single grain?” | j. ___ The son said, “Don’t worry. |
| e. The rich man said ________ and sadly returned home. | k. ___ The woman answered, “It is a treasure pot. |
| f. The rich man said, “You ______ put a grain of rice in the pot.” | If you cook one grain |
| g. The son put a single ________ in the pot. | |
| h. The woman answered, “It is a _______ pot.” | |
| i. The son came with the pot, ________ rice_______ of the pot, filled a bowl with the rice, and ________ placed it in front of the rich man. | |

5. Write answers to these questions.

| a. Who lived with the old woman? | |
| b. Who came to their house? | |
| c. What did the son put in the pot? | |
| d. What did the rich man eat? | |
| e. What kind of pot was it? | |
| f. What happened if you put one grain of rice in the pot? | |
| g. How much money did the rich man give the old woman for the pot? | |
| h. What did he do with the pot once he took it home? | |
| i. How much rice did the pot make? | |
| j. Why didn’t the pot work? | |
The Frog Prince

1. Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Tibetan</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Tibetan</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>childless</td>
<td>གི་སྦྱར་བོད་མ།</td>
<td>felt a pain</td>
<td>རབ་སྐྱེས་བོད་མ།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>some time later</td>
<td>ཏོ་བོད་ལྟར་</td>
<td>son-in-law</td>
<td>རྒྱལ་ལྟ་པ།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unable</td>
<td>གི་སྦྱར་བོད་མ།</td>
<td>screamed in fear</td>
<td>རབ་སྐྱེས་བོད་མ།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>middle</td>
<td>གི་སྦྱར་བོད་མ།</td>
<td>youngest</td>
<td>རྒྱལ་ལྟ་པ།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kept his promises</td>
<td>སྒྲ་ལོ་མེད་པ་</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Text

A poor childless couple wanted a child very much. One day the woman felt a pain in one knee. That night a very ugly frog jumped out of her knee. The old couple was very afraid of him and wanted to kill him. However, the frog promised that he would bring them wealth and marry the local king’s daughter.

Some time later the frog went to the King’s palace and shouted, “Dear King, I am your son-in-law. Please call your daughter out.”

The King was amazed. Everyone in the King’s palace came out and looked around. Finally, the King noticed the frog. The frog repeated, “I am your son-in-law. Call your daughter out.” All the people laughed at the ugly frog.

The King said, “I will not let my beautiful daughter marry you—you ugly frog.”

The frog angrily replied, “You shall laugh louder and louder and be unable to stop until you let your daughter come out and marry me.” It was true. The King laughed louder and louder. He could not stop. The people of the palace screamed in fear. At last, he had to call out his three daughters.

All the girls were very pretty. The King told his oldest daughter to marry the frog but she refused because the frog was so ugly.

The King told the middle daughter to marry the frog but she also refused.

The King asked his youngest daughter to marry the frog and she agreed. She knew that if she did not her father would die. To show his appreciation the King gave his youngest daughter much treasure.

A large and beautiful wedding was held for the beautiful princess and the ugly frog. The day of the wedding, the frog removed his frog skin and became a very handsome man.

Thus, the frog kept his promises and the poor couple enjoyed a wonderful life.
3. Match phrases from Part I and Part II to make correct sentences.

**PART I**

a. A poor childless couple ___
b. All the people ___
c. At last, he had ___
d. Everyone in the King’s palace ___
e. That night a very ugly frog ___
f. The day of the wedding, the frog removed ___
g. The King asked his youngest daughter ___
h. The King laughed ___
i. The King told the middle daughter ___
j. The people of the palace ___
k. However, the frog promised that he would bring them wealth ___

**PART II**

1. and marry the local king’s daughter.
2. came out and looked around.
3. his frog skin and became a very handsome man.
4. jumped out of her knee.
5. laughed at the ugly frog.

4. Mark these sentences T (true) or F (false).

a. The couple had a child. **T F**
b. The frog jumped out of the woman’s arm. **T F**
c. The frog was really a very handsome man. **T F**
d. The King couldn't stop laughing until he agreed to let his daughter marry the frog. **T F**
e. The King laughed at the frog. **T F**
f. The oldest daughter agreed to marry the frog. **T F**
g. The youngest daughter agreed to marry the frog. **T F**
h. The King was __________. **T F**
i. The people of the palace ________. **T F**

5. Put these words in the blanks below, amazed, childless, felt a pain, jumped out, kept his promises, middle, oldest, promised, screamed with fear, some time later, to call out, unable, youngest, noticed, son-in-law.

a. __________ the frog went to the King’s palace and shouted, “I am your __________.”
b. A poor _______couple wanted a child very much.
c. The King ______ the frog.
d. The frog ______ that he would bring them wealth and marry the local King’s daughter.
e. The woman ______ in one knee.
f. Avery ugly frog ______ of her knee.
g. The frog replied, “You shall laugh and be_____ until you let your daughter marry me.”
h. The King asked his ________ daughter to marry the frog and she agreed.
i. The King told his ________ daughter to marry the frog.
j. The King told the _______ daughter to marry the frog but she also refused.
k. The King was ________.
l. The people of the palace ________.
m. The frog ________ and the poor couple enjoyed a wonderful life.
Three Girls (ཐུགེ་ཐོམ་ནམ་)

1. Vocabulary

princesses མཐོང་རྒྱན། servant རྡོ་རྗེ། wicked (bad, evil) ནག་རྒྱུས།
float མོང་ན། sank ལུགས། drowned ནག་བུརྙན།
river surface རྦྷོལ། plan had worked རང་བོད། adopt སྐྱོད།
reported (talked about, said) ལུགས། tricked ཚོགས།
ordered སྦྱོད། imprison རྡོ་རྗེ་ཐོབ་མ།

2. Text

Two beautiful princesses and their servant went to a river to play. The oldest daughter brought her gold bowl, the youngest daughter brought her silver bowl, and the servant brought her wood bowl.

The wicked servant wanted the two princesses to die. She thought that, after they died, the King would make her a princess.

“Let’s put our bowls in the river and see whose bowl will float,” she suggested.

The two daughters agreed. As soon as they were in the water, the gold and silver bowls sank while the wood bowl floated. The King’s daughters had lost their beautiful bowls. They were sad and afraid. The servant said, “Oh, no! You have lost your beautiful bowls. Your father will be very angry.”

As soon as the oldest daughter heard this, she jumped into the river to find her bowl. Her younger sister, wanting to help, jumped in after her.

Neither could swim. They both drowned.

The servant picked up her wood bowl from the river surface. She was very happy because her plan had worked. Now she hoped that the King would forget his two daughters and adopt her as his own daughter.

She returned to the King and sadly reported, “Dear King, I am so sorry. Your beautiful daughters just drowned in the river.”

The King ordered his guards to go to the river and look for his daughters. They found the silver bowl and the gold bowl at the bottom of the river but they did not find the two girls.

When the King learned this, he was very angry with the servant. He realized that she must have tricked his daughters. “You did not take care of my daughters,” said the King and ordered his guards to imprison the servant.
3. Put these words in the blanks below: the, that, this, and, to, of, in, an, for, with, a.

a. Two beautiful princesses _____ their servant went _____ river _____ play.
b. _____ oldest daughter brought her gold bowl, _____ youngest daughter brought her silver bowl, _____ _____ servant brought her wood bowl.
c. _____ wicked servant wanted _____ two princesses _____ die.
d. She thought _____, after they died, _____ King would make her _____ princess.
e. “Let’s put our bowls _____ _____ river _____ see whose bowl will float,” she suggested.
f. _____ two daughters agreed.
g. As soon as they were _____ water, _____ gold _____ silver bowls sank while _____ wood bowl floated. _____ King’s daughters had lost their bowls. They were sad _____ afraid.
h. As soon as _____ oldest daughter heard _____, she jumped into _____ river _____ find her bowl.
i. Her younger sister, wanting _____ help, jumped _____ after her.
j. _____ servant picked up her wood bowl from _____ river surface.
k. She hoped _____ _____ King would forget his two daughters _____ adopt her as his own daughter.
l. She returned _____ _____ King _____ sadly reported, “Dear King, I am so sorry."
m. Your beautiful daughters just drowned ____ ____ river.”

n. ____ King ordered his guards ____ go ____ ____ river ____ look ____ his daughters.
o. They found ____ silver bowl ____ ____ gold bowl at ____ bottom ____ ____ river but they did not find ____ two girls.
p. When ____ King learned ____ , he was very angry ____ ____ servant.
q. He realized ____ she must have tricked his daughters. “You did not take care ____ my daughters,” said ____ King ____ ordered his guards ____ imprison ____ servant.

4. Write the names of the speakers in the blanks. 回答

a. _______ “Dear King, I am sorry. Your beautiful daughters just drowned in the river.”
b. _______ “Oh, no! You have lost your beautiful bowls. Your father will be very angry.”
c. _______ “You did not take care of my daughters.”
d. _______ “Let’s put our bowls in the river and see whose bowl will float.”

5. Write answers to these questions. 回答

a. What did each of the girls take when they went to play?
b. Where did they go to play?
c. Why did the servant want the two princesses to die?
d. How did the servant feel when the two princesses died?
e. What did the servant tell the king about the princesses’ death?

6. Put these sentences in the correct order. 回答

a. ___ “You did not take care of my daughters,” said the King.
b. ___ “Your father will be very angry.”
c. ___ The gold and silver bowls sank in the water while the wood bowl floated.
d. ___ Neither could swim.
e. ___ She thought that, after they died, the King would make her a princess.
f. ___ The King’s daughters had lost their beautiful bowls.
g. ___ The two daughters agreed.
h. ___ They found the silver bowl and the gold bowl at the bottom of the river.
i. ___ When the King learned this, he was angry with the servant.
1. Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Nepali</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>to rob</td>
<td>अरोब</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tug the rope</td>
<td>खाडा थापो</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lowered</td>
<td>उर्ध्ध गति</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stole</td>
<td>जुङ्ग</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rode away</td>
<td>उड्ठान</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>punished</td>
<td>चुटकाउने</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>revenge</td>
<td>विक्षण</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comfortable</td>
<td>गर्भमय</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to urinate</td>
<td>निउरियते</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liquid</td>
<td>जलमय</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>melts</td>
<td>तैल्य</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>delicious</td>
<td>उद्यम</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prison</td>
<td>जेल</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Text

One summer night Pencu and Renchin decided to rob the King’s palace. First, they made a hole in the palace roof. Renchin said, “I will wait for you here. You enter the palace, put something in this box, tug the rope, I will pull the box up, and then I’ll pull you up.”

Pencu believed Renchin. After Renchin lowered him into the palace, he stole some treasures, put them in the box, and tugged the rope. Renchin pulled up the box and rode away. Pencu remained in the palace and could not get out. When Renchin was leaving he shouted, “There’s a thief in the palace!” The King’s servants caught Pencu and punished him.

Pencu did not forget and wanted revenge.

One day he found Renchin and said, “The King has wonderful jewelry in the palace. Let’s steal it.” Greedy Renchin said, “Okay, but I have one condition—I will wait on the roof while you go into the house.” Pencu agreed.

After they reached the palace Renchin lowered Pencu into the palace. Pencu waited a few minutes, got into the box, and tugged the rope.

Renchin was delighted that the box was so heavy. He thought it must have a huge amount of jewelry inside.

Pencu was happy and comfortable inside the box. But it was a long way to Renchin’s home and he had to urinate in the box.

Renchin noticed liquid running out of the box and thought, “This jewelry is really wonderful. When it meets the night air it melts!” He put his finger in the liquid, licked it, and said, “Delicious.”

When he at last reached his home he said to his wife, “I’m sure Pencu is in prison waiting for death. Now I am the richest man in the world.” Then he opened the box and received a very big surprise.
The King’s servants ___

3. Match phrases from Part I and Part II to make correct sentences.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Part I</th>
<th>Part II</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. After they reached the palace</td>
<td>b. It was a long way to Renchin’s home</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. First, they made</td>
<td>d. He put his finger in the liquid,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e. He thought it must have a</td>
<td>f. One summer night Pencu and Renchin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g. Pencu did not forget</td>
<td>g. Pencu remained in the palace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h. Pencu waited a few minutes,</td>
<td>i. Pencu was happy and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>j. Renchin pulled up</td>
<td>k. Renchin was delighted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l. The King’s servants</td>
<td>m. Then he opened the box</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
PART II

1. a hole in the palace roof.
2. and could not get out.
3. and he had to urinate in the box.
4. and received a very big surprise.
5. and wanted revenge.
6. caught Pencu and punished him.
7. comfortable inside the box.
8. decided to rob the King’s palace.
9. got into the box, and tugged the rope.
10. huge amount of jewelry inside.
11. licked it, and said, “Delicious.”
12. Renchin lowered Pencu into the palace.
13. that the box was so heavy.
14. the box and rode away.

4. Put these words in the blanks below.

a. Pencu _______ Renchin decided _____ rob ______ King’s palace.
b. They made _____ hole _____ palace roof.
c. Renchin said, “I will wait _____ you here.”
d. “You enter _____ palace, put something _____ this box, tug ______ rope, I will pull _____ box _______. _____ then I’ll pull you ________.”
e. After Renchin lowered him_______ palace, he stole some treasures, put them _____ _____ box, _____ tugged _____ rope.
f. Renchin pulled ___ ___ box _____ rode away.
g. Pencu remained_______ palace_______ could not get _____.
h. Renchin shouted, “There’s_______ thief ______ palace!”
i. _____ King’s servants caught Pencu ______ punished him.
j. Pencu did not forget ______ wanted revenge.
k. He found Renchin _____ said, “The King has jewelry ______ palace.”
l. Greedy Renchin said, “Okay, but I have one condition—I will wait ______ ______ roof while you go ______ ______ house.”

5. Write answers to these questions.

a. What did Pencu and Renchin decide to do?
b. Who was lowered into the palace?
c. After the box was pulled up, what did Renchin do?
d. What did the King’s servants do to Pencu?
e. What did Pencu want?
f. What did Pencu say the King had in his palace?
g. Why was Renchin delighted that the box was so heavy?
h. What did he think the liquid was?
i. What did he see when he opened the box?
The Timid Thief

1. Vocabulary

remote ལྷེས། གཞིང་།
scripture རྡོ་རོི། གཞིང་།
thieves སྟོད།
straining your ears to listen བོད་ལྗོངས།
chanting གདུགས།
intently གཞན། རེག་པར།
frightened གཞན།
devil རྗེན།
the gods have taken pity བོད་ལྗོངས།
a man pretending to be a monk དཔེར་བསྲིས་པ་ལེགས་པ

value རྱིན། རྗེས་བཙོད།
protect སྤྲོད།
hopping སྟོད་འབྲེལ་བྱེད།
creeping on the ground བོད་ལྗོངས།
tiptoe སྟོད།
crawling སྟོད།
raced away སྟོད།
steal སྟོད།
stole སྟོད་ལྕགས།
A poor old woman lived alone in a small tent in a very remote place. She had no money and she had no children. The only thing of any value that she owned was a sheep.

The old woman was afraid that she would lose the sheep. She thought, “I would be very glad to know a scripture that would protect me from thieves.”

One day a man pretending to be a monk went to the old lady’s home. The old lady was very glad because she almost never had any visitors. She thought, “The gods have taken pity on me and sent this monk to teach me a scripture that will protect my sheep from thieves.” Then she asked the monk to teach her a prayer that would protect her sheep from thieves.

The “monk” thought, “If I say I don’t know such a prayer, she will know I’m not a monk and then she won’t give me lunch.”

Just at that moment, the “monk” looked out of the tent. He saw a rabbit hopping through the weeds. He said, “You must say, ‘You are coming by secret steps. You are straining your ears to listen. You are creeping on the ground. You are running away.’” As the old woman happily repeated these words the “monk” left after finishing his lunch.

One afternoon the old woman sat in her tent chanting her newly learned prayer. A thief was hiding in the weeds outside. He was planning to steal the woman’s sheep. As he tiptoed towards the tent, the old lady murmured, “You are coming by secret steps.” The thief stopped and listened intently.

The old lady said, “You are straining your ears to hear.” The thief was now very afraid. He thought that the old lady had seen him and he began crawling away.

Then he heard, “You are crawling.” These words so frightened him that he raced away.

At the same time he heard the woman say, “You are running away.” The thief ran as fast as he could. He thought the old lady must be a god or a devil. From that moment on he never stole again.
A poor old woman lived in a very remote place
She had no children
The only thing of any value that she owned was a sheep
The old woman was afraid that she would lose the sheep
She thought, “I would be glad to know a scripture that would protect me from thieves.”
A man pretending to be a monk went to the old lady’s home
The old lady was very glad because she almost never had any visitors
She thought, “This scripture will protect my sheep from thieves.”
She asked the monk to teach her a prayer that would protect her sheep from thieves.
The monk thought, “The gods have taken pity on me and sent this scripture to teach me a scripture that will protect my sheep from thieves.”
If I say I don’t know such a prayer, she will know I’m not a monk
Just at that moment the monk looked out of the tent. He saw a rabbit hopping through the weeds.

3. Put these marks of punctuation in the spaces below.

. . “ ? ‘

a. A poor old woman lived in a very remote place __
b. She had no children __
c. The only thing of any value that she owned was a sheep __
d. The old woman was afraid that she would lose the sheep __
e. She thought ___ I would be glad to know a scripture that would protect me from thieves ____
f. A man pretending to be a monk went to the old lady’s home __
g. The old lady was very glad because she almost never had any visitors __
h. She thought ___ This scripture will protect my sheep from thieves ___
i. She asked the monk to teach her a prayer that would protect her sheep from thieves __
j. The ___monk __ thought ___ If I say I don’t know such a prayer __ she will know I’m not a monk __
k. Just at that moment __ the ___monk ___ looked out of the tent __

4. Put these words in the blanks below: she, old, woman, he, monk, thief, man, you, old lady, sheep, I.

a. A poor ________ lived alone in a small tent in a very remote place.
b. ___ had no money and ___ had no children.
c. The only thing of any value that ___ owned was a ______.
d. The __________ was afraid that ___ would lose the _____.
e. ___ thought, “__ would be very glad to know a scripture that would protect me from thieves.”
f. One day a ___ pretending to be a _____ went to the __________’s home.
g. The __________ was very glad because ___ almost never had any visitors.
h. ___ thought, “The gods have taken pity on me and sent this _____ to teach me a scripture that will protect my _____ from thieves.”
i. Then ___ asked the _____ to teach her a prayer that would protect her ______ from thieves.
j. The “____ “ thought, “If __ say __ don’t know such a prayer. ___ will know I’m not a _____ and then ___ won’t give me any lunch.”
k. Just at that moment the “____ “ looked out of the tent. ___ saw a rabbit hopping through the weeds. ___ said, “___ must say, ‘___ are coming by secret steps.’”

•106•
1. “___ are straining your ears to listen. ___ are creeping on the ground. ___ are running away.”
2. As the _________ repeated these words the “____ “ left after finishing his lunch.
3. One afternoon the _________ sat in her tent chanting her newly learned prayer.
4. A ____ was hiding in the weeds outside. ___ was planning to steal the woman’s ______.
5. As ___ tiptoed towards the tent, the ____ murmured, “___ are coming by secret steps.”
6. The_____ stopped and listened intently.
7. The _________ said, “___ are straining your ears to hear.”
8. The_____ was now afraid. ___ thought that the _________ saw him and began crawling away.
9. Then ___ heard, “___ are crawling.”
10. These words so frightened him that ___ raced away.
11. At the same time ___ heard the woman say, “___ are running away.”
12. The_____ ran as fast as ___ could.
13. ___ thought the _________ must be a god or a devil.
14. From that moment on ___ never stole again.

5. Write answers to these questions.

a. Who lived alone?
b. What was the only thing of value that she had?
c. What was the old woman afraid of?
d. Where did the old woman live?
e. What did the old woman want?
f. Who visited the old woman?
g. What did the man pretend to be?
h. Why did the man pretend to be a monk?
i. Why was the old woman glad to see the man?
j. What “scripture” did the man teach the old woman?
k. What did the man see in the weeds?
l. Who hid outside the woman’s tent?
m. What did the man outside the tent want to do?
n. Why was the thief very afraid?
o. Why did the thief never again steal?

6. What lesson does this story teach?

a. Something that happens can be very surprising.
b. Thieves should not steal.
c. Men should not pretend to be monks.
d. Women should not live alone in tents.
1. Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Tibetan</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>eaves</td>
<td>མཚུངས།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to trade</td>
<td>གང་ོང་བར་རེད།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stretch out</td>
<td>དབེམ་པའི་འཇིག་རྟྲ བེན།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>claws</td>
<td>ནུང་མའོ།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>recite</td>
<td>ཁ་བོ།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tight</td>
<td>ཡོད་བེན།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loosened</td>
<td>ཕེས།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rolled</td>
<td>བདེན་བོ།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>explode</td>
<td>རྣམ་པ།</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Sparrow and Swallow lived in a Tibetan palace. Sparrow lived in the eaves and Swallow lived in a grotto. One day Sparrow asked Swallow to trade nests. Swallow refused.

The next morning when Swallow flew out to get food, Sparrow hid in Swallow’s nest. When Swallow returned and found Sparrow, he told Sparrow to leave but Sparrow refused.

Swallow went to the King of the birds, Hunting Eagle, and told him what had happened. Hunting Eagle ordered Sparrow to leave Swallow’s nest.

Sparrow did not obey. Hunting Eagle thought for a moment and said, “Please stretch out your head.” Sparrow did as Hunting Eagle said. Hunting Eagle grabbed Sparrow with his claws and flew away.

Near a river, Hunting Eagle prepared to eat Sparrow. Sparrow quietly entreated, “Please do not kill me here. This place is where the King’s horses drink. If anyone sees you eating an innocent sparrow, they will recite scriptures very loudly and curse you.”

Hunting Eagle thought that this was true and flew toward a wild place. When they got there, Sparrow said, “Please wait a moment before you kill me. I have something very important to tell you. But your claw is so tight that I can hardly speak.”

Hunting Eagle loosened his claw. Sparrow escaped and flew into an old wild yak horn. Hunting Eagle chased after him but he was too big to go inside the horn.

“Please don’t kill me as my father was killed,” said Sparrow.

Hunting Eagle asked, “How did your father die?”

Sparrow said, “My father was chased by a hunting eagle. He flew into a wild yak horn. The eagle rolled in water, rolled in sand, flew very high in the sky, and then crashed into the horn. My father died when the eagle hit the horn and made it explode.”

Hunting Eagle thought this was a splendid idea. He followed Sparrow’s instructions exactly.

When he struck the yak horn Sparrow was hiding in, the horn did not explode. Instead, Hunting Eagle died.
When Swallow was out getting food, Sparrow hid in Swallow’s nest. Sparrow did not obey.

Near a river, Hunting Eagle prepared to eat Sparrow. Hunting Eagle thought for a moment and said, “Please stretch out your head.” Hunting Eagle ordered Sparrow to leave Swallow’s nest.

Hunting Eagle grabbed Sparrow with his claws and flew away.

Hunting Eagle chased after him but he was too big to go inside the horn.

Hunting Eagle thought this was a splendid idea.

A day Sparrow asked Swallow to trade nests.

Sparrow escaped and flew into an old wild yak horn.

The eagle rolled in water, rolled in sand, flew high in the sky, and crashed into the horn.

When Swallow was out getting food, Sparrow hid in Swallow’s nest.

---

3. Put these sentences in the correct order.

a. ___ “Please don’t kill me as my father was killed,” said Sparrow.

b. ___ He followed Sparrow’s instructions exactly.

c. ___ Hunting Eagle chased after him but he was too big to go inside the horn.

d. ___ Hunting Eagle grabbed Sparrow with his claws and flew away.

e. ___ Hunting Eagle ordered Sparrow to leave Swallow’s nest.

f. ___ Hunting Eagle thought for a moment and said, “Please stretch out your head.”

g. ___ Hunting Eagle thought this was a splendid idea.

h. ___ Near a river, Hunting Eagle prepared to eat Sparrow.

i. ___ One day Sparrow asked Swallow to trade nests.

j. ___ Sparrow did not obey.

k. ___ Sparrow escaped and flew into an old wild yak horn.

l. ___ Sparrow quietly entreated, “Please do not kill me here.”

m. ___ Swallow refused.

n. ___ The eagle rolled in water, rolled in sand, flew high in the sky, and crashed into the horn.

o. ___ When Swallow was out getting food, Sparrow hid in Swallow’s nest.
a. Where did Sparrow live?
b. Where did Swallow live?
c. What did Sparrow want to do?
d. Did Swallow agree?
e. What happened when Swallow left his nest?
f. Who did Swallow ask for help?
g. What did Hunting Eagle order Sparrow to do?
h. What did Sparrow say would happen if Hunting Eagle ate him where the King’s horses drank?
i. Why did Hunting Eagle loosen his claw?
j. Where did Sparrow escape to?
k. How did Sparrow say his father died?
l. What happened to Hunting Eagle?

5. Crossword

Across
1. Sparrow lived in the ________.
3. “…I can ________ speak.”
4. Hunting Eagle __________ his claw.
7. Hunting Eagle _______ Sparrow to leave Swallow’s nest.
8. “My father died when the eagle hit the horn and made it ______.”

Down
1. Sparrow ______ and flew into an old wild yak horn.
2. Hunting Eagle thought this was a _______ idea.
5. Sparrow quietly _______ed, “Please do not kill me here…..”
6. Swallow lived in a _______
Zhashi and Caireng were brothers. Zhaxi was a monk and lived in a monastery. Caireng was a butcher and lived in Kouman.

Caireng had been a butcher for a long time. When winter came people who wanted to have yak or sheep meat hired him to kill their animals. People paid him ten to fifteen yuan to kill an animal. Caireng used the money to buy food and other things for himself and Zhaxi.

One day Caireng passed by a tent where an old woman and a young man lived. They asked Caireng to kill a sheep. Caireng looked at the sheep. It was so thin its bones were poking through the skin. Caireng said, “I don’t want to kill this sheep because it is as thin as a fox.”

The woman angrily said, “It’s your job. Do as I tell you!”

Caireng did not want to quarrel. He gathered grass and put it in front of the sheep. He also brought some water for the sheep. But the sheep would not eat or drink.

Caireng took out his knife and sharpened it on a stone. He suddenly thought of something and went into the tent, leaving his knife near the stone. When he came back, the knife was gone. The sheep had hidden it. Caireng looked for it and finally found it.

He realized then that the sheep had feelings like a human. He hated himself for killing animals for money. He knew that this was a wrong thing to do. He turned the sheep loose and chased it up a nearby mountain. Feeling so unhappy about all the animals he had killed in his life, he decided to kill himself and threw himself off a ledge. Rather than falling to the bottom however, he found himself flying in the sky. He had become a deity.

When Zhaxi heard this he angrily thought, “Caireng killed animals for money but he became a god. If I throw myself off a mountaintop I will become a better god than he.”

He later did jump off a mountain, fell to the ground, and died.
3. Put the sentences in the correct order.

a. ___Caireng did not want to quarrel. ___
b. ___Caireng said, “I don’t want to kill this sheep because it is as thin as a fox.”
c. ___Caireng took out his knife and sharpened it on a stone.
d. ___He decided to kill himself and threw himself off a ledge.
e. ___He later did jump off a mountain, fell to the ground, and died.
He realized then that the sheep had feelings like a human.

He went into the tent, leaving his knife near the stone.

He turned the sheep loose and chased it up a nearby mountain.

It was so thin its bones were poking through the skin.

One day Caireng passed by a tent where an old woman and a young man lived.

Rather than falling to the bottom however, he found himself flying in the sky.

The woman angrily said, “It’s your job. Do as I tell you!”

People who wanted to have yak or sheep meat hired him to kill their animals.

Zhaxi angrily thought, “Caireng killed animals for money but he became a god.”

Zhaxi and Caireng were brothers.

---

4. Put these words in the blanks below: a, an, and, at, by, for, in, into, on, or, out, the, to.

a. Zhaxi______ Caireng were brothers.

b. Zhaxi was ______monk ______ lived ______ ______ monastery.

c. Caireng was ______ butcher ______ lived ______ Kouman.

d. Caireng had been ______ butcher ______ _______ long time.

e. People who wanted _____ have yak ____ sheep meat hired him ____ kill their animals.

f. People paid him ten _____ fifteen yuan_____ kill _____ animal.

g. Caireng used _____ money _____ buy food _____ other things _____ himself _____ Zhaxi.

h. Caireng passed____ ____tent where _____ old woman _____ _____ young man lived.

i. They asked Caireng _____ kill _____ sheep.

j. Caireng looked ______ ______ sheep.

k. Its bones were poking through ______ skin.

l. Caireng said, “I don’t want _____ kill this sheep because it is as thin as _____ fox.”

m. ______ woman said, “It’s your job.”

n. Caireng did not want _______ quarrel.

o. He gathered grass _______ put it_______ front _______ _______ sheep.

p. He also brought some water _______ _______ sheep.

q. But _______ sheep would not eat _______ drink.

r. Caireng took_______ his knife_______ sharpened it _______ _______ stone.

s. He thought____ something____ went ____ _____ tent, leaving his knife near ____ stone.

---

5. Write answers to these questions.

a. Were Zhaxi and Caireng sisters?

b. What did Zhaxi do?

c. What did Caireng do?

d. What did people hire Caireng to do?

e. How much money was he paid?

f. Why did Caireng not want to kill the sheep?

g. What did the sheep do with Caireng’s knife?

h. What did Caireng realize the sheep had?

i. What did he do with the sheep?

j. What happened when Caireng jumped off the ledge?

k. What happened when Zhaxi jumped off the mountaintop?
Two Frogs

1. Vocabulary

well 舒服
uncomfortable 不舒服
hurt someone’s feelings 伤害别人
admiring 欣赏
noticed 注意到了
proudly 骄傲地
two frogs were friends. Older Frog lived in a well and Younger Frog lived in a big lake.

One day when they happened to meet, Older Frog said, “Younger Brother, let’s go to my home today!” and Younger Frog agreed. When they reached the well where Older Frog lived, Younger Frog felt uncomfortable because the well did not have much water, the water was dirty, and he could not see the sky. Coming in and out of the well was not easy either. But he did not leave quickly because he did not want to hurt Older Frog’s feelings.

Younger Frog was uncomfortable and jumped up and down. Older Frog noticed this and thought Younger Frog was admiring his home. “How is my home?” he asked.

Younger Frog smiled and said, “What can I say?”

Older Frog proudly said, “The water in my home is the best in the world.”

Younger Frog replied, “I don’t think so.” Older Frog was not happy with this answer, the two frogs began arguing, and finally Younger Frog said he wanted to leave.

Older Frog said, “Please take some water from here.”

“No. My home has enough water,” said Younger Frog.

“I want to see your home,” said Older Frog and the two set off for the lake where Younger Frog lived.

Older Frog was feeling proud and arrogant. He thought, “When I reach his home, I will drink all his water. Then he will ask me for my water to drink.”

When they reached the lake, Younger Frog said, “Dear Older Frog, we are very near my home.” Older Frog did not look out across the vast lake. Instead, he only noticed some water in front of him. He stuck his head into the water and began drinking. Although his stomach was soon full, he had not reduced the size of Younger Frog’s home. He thought for a moment but then decided to drink some more. His stomach became bigger and bigger. Suddenly, there was a “ping” sound as his stomach burst and he died.
3. The words in the sentences below are scrambled. Unscramble them to make correct sentences.

a. friends two were frogs
b. lived a Older Frog in well
c. Younger big in lake Frog lived a
d. go today my Brother let’s to home Younger
e. But he did not leave quickly because [he Frog’s want not did hurt to Older feelings.
f. the the in in my is home the best world water
g. some take water here from please
4. Did Younger Frog (YF) or Older Frog (OF) say or think the sentences below?

a. YF/OF “Younger Brother, let’s go to my home today!”
b. YF/OF “How is my home?”
c. YF/OF “What can I say?”
d. YF/OF “The water in my home is the best in the world.”
e. YF/OF “I don’t think so.”
f. YF/OF “Please take some water from here.”
g. YF/OF “No. My home has enough water.”
h. YF/OF “I want to see your home.”
i. YF/OF “When I reach his home, I will drink all his water.”
j. YF/OF “Dear Older Frog, we are very near my home.”

5. Put these words in the blanks below:

a. Older Frog was feeling proud ___ arrogant.
b. Then he will ask me ___ my water ___ drink.
c. When they reached ___ lake
d. Younger Frog said, “Dear Older Frog, we are very near my home.”
e. Older Frog did not look out across ___ vast lake.
f. He noticed some water ___ front of him.
g. He stuck his head into ___ water ___ began drinking.
h. He had not reduced ___ size of Younger Frog’s home.
i. He thought ___ ___ moment but then decided ___ drink some more.
j. His stomach became bigger ___ bigger.
k. There was ___ “ping” sound ___ his stomach burst ___ he died.

6. What lesson does this story teach?

a. Older people know more than younger people.
b. Younger people know more than older people.
c. Older people don’t always know more than younger people.
d. Frogs are stupid.
The Rock Lion Opens Its Mouth (སྟེགས་དབང་)

1. Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Tibetan</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>the foot of</td>
<td>འིག་ལམ།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forest</td>
<td>གིས་རྩ་པའི།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>head of the family</td>
<td>སྐེལ་བ།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frightened</td>
<td>བོད།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>master</td>
<td>གནོན་པ།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>honest</td>
<td>འེད་པ།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sunrise</td>
<td>གྲུབ་ཟེངས།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stomach</td>
<td>རིལ་བ།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>has risen</td>
<td>བོད།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jealous</td>
<td>རྣམ་པ་ཙམ།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fetched</td>
<td>གནོན།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>greedy</td>
<td>འཛིན་པ་ཙམ།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clamped shut</td>
<td>དབྱིང་ཤེས།</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Text

A poor family and a rich family lived at the foot of a mountain. There was a large forest at the top of the mountain. Every day the head of the poor family went to the forest to get wood to sell for food and clothing.

In the forest, there was a rock lion. Usually the poor man would put some tsamba and butter in the lion’s mouth and say, “Please eat this, Brother Lion.”

The days went by. One day as the poor man was feeding the rock lion, the lion said, “Thank you, friend. You are a good man.”

The poor man was frightened and said, “Brother Lion, you don’t have a master to feed you, so I gave you some food. I don’t have any good food because I am poor.”

“You are an honest man. Tomorrow morning before sunrise, come here and I will give you something,” said the lion.

The man took his firewood and returned home. The next morning he went to the lion. “Listen,” said the lion, “there is much gold in my stomach. You may take some. But when the sun has risen, you must take your hand out of my stomach because my mouth will close.”

“Yes, I understand,” said the man. He put his hand in the lion’s stomach and soon he had filled a small bag with gold. “This is enough for me, ” he said and went home.

The poor man was now rich. His rich neighbor was jealous and asked, “How did you become so rich?” The honest man told him about the rock lion.

The rich man put on old clothes, went to the forest and, everyday, did as the poor man had done. He fed the lion tsamba and butter and fetched firewood. One day the lion repeated what he had told the poor man.

The rich man was very happy and came the next day with a big bag. He took much gold from the lion’s stomach. The sun rose but the greedy man still did not have enough. Finally, the lion’s mouth clamped shut on his arm and never opened again.
3. Match phrases from Part I and Part II to make correct sentences.

PART I

a. A poor family and a rich family ___
b. The poor man went to the forest ___
c. The lion’s mouth shut on his arm ___
d. He fed the lion tsamba ___
e. He put his hand in the lion’s stomach ___
f. He took much gold ___
g. His rich neighbor was jealous ___
h. As he was feeding the rock lion, ___
i. One day the lion repeated ___
j. The honest man told him ___
k. He wore old clothes, went to the forest ___
l. The rich man was very happy ___
m. The sun rose but the greedy man ___

PART II

1. about the rock lion.
2. and asked, “How did you become rich?”
3. and butter and fetched firewood.
4. and came the next day with a big bag.
5. and never opened again.
6. and soon he had filled a small bag with gold.
7. and, everyday, did as the poor man had done.
8. from the lion’s stomach.
9. lived at the foot of a mountain.
10. still did not have enough.
11. the lion said, “Thank you. You are good.” to get wood to sell for food and clothing.
12. what he had told the poor man.
4. Crossword

Across
3. There was a large _____ at the top of the mountain.
6. The poor man was _____ and said, “Brother Lion,…”
8. “…Tomorrow morning before _____, come here and I will give you something,” said the lion.
9. He fed the lion tsamba and butter and _____ firewood.

Down
1. His rich neighbor was _____
2. Every day the _____ of the poor family went to the forest to get….
3. A poor family and a rich family lived at the _____ a mountain.
4. “Brother Lion, you don’t have a _____ to feed you, so I gave you some food…”
5. “You are an _____ man. Tomorrow morning before…”
7. The sun rose but the _____ man still did not have enough.
10. Finally, the lion’s mouth _____ed shut on his arm and never opened again.

5. Write answers to these questions.

a. Did the rich family and the poor family live at the top of the mountain?
b. What was at the top of the mountain?
c. What did the head of the poor family do every day?
d. What did he give the rock lion to eat?
e. What did the rock lion tell the man to do before sunrise?
f. Where was the gold?
g. How much gold did the man take?
h. Was the rich man happy the poor man had money?
i. Why didn’t the man stop taking the gold?
j. What happened to the rich man?
The Birth-Giving Pt

1. Vocabulary

landlord ལྷན་
unwilling རྗེས་
borrow ལེགས་
on the condition རྡེ་བོད་
anticipating རེ་ེ་
unexpected good fortune རུལ་མཐོང་དམངས་
insisted རུལ་མཐོང་དམངས་
miserable རུལ་མཐོང་
demanded རུལ་མཐོང་
pots རྟོགས་
lend རྟོགས་
spoke very kindly རུལ་མཐོང་དམངས་
exactly རུལ་མཐོང་
delighted རུལ་མཐོང་
unfortunate རུལ་མཐོང་དམངས་
afford རུལ་མཐོང་
astonished རུལ་མཐོང་
nothing he could do རུལ་མཐོང་

122
A landlord had many pots. The poor people had no pots for cooking food, but he was unwilling to lend any to them.

One day Dunba went to the landlord to borrow a pot. He spoke very kindly to the landlord, who finally lent him a pot on the condition that he return it in two days.

Exactly two days later the landlord came to Dunba’s home to take the pot. Anticipating the landlord’s visit, Dunba had put a small pot in the landlord’s pot. When the landlord saw the small pot inside his larger pot he was very surprised. He asked, “Where did this small pot come from?”

Dunba said, “Your pot had a baby. Because this pot is yours, I am returning both pots to you.” The landlord was delighted with such unexpected good fortune and happily returned to his home.

Some time later Dunba went again to the landlord’s home to borrow a pot. The landlord thought, “If I lend him one pot he will return two,” and happily lent Dunba a big pot. After a few days, Dunba put a small pot inside the large pot and returned the pot to the landlord.

The landlord told his wife about this. She said, “It’s very unfortunate that we did not lend him a gold pot. If we lend him a gold pot many times we will have many small gold pots and become much richer. Next time he wants a pot, lend him a gold one.”

The next time Dunba asked to borrow a pot, the landlord insisted that he take a gold one. As soon as he got home with the gold pot, Dunba broke the pot into many pieces. He gave the pieces to people who could not afford to buy a pot.

After some days, the landlord came to Dunba’s home. He was excited because he thought he would be taking home two gold pots. When he saw Dunba, Dunba looked worried and miserable. He asked Dunba what had happened. Dunba said, “You had bad luck. Your pot died.”

The astonished landlord demanded, “How is it possible that a pot could die?” Dunba said, “Why can’t you believe this? Everything that gives birth also dies. People, yaks, horses, sheep are all the same.” The landlord was very angry but he knew there was nothing he could do.
3. Write answers to these questions.

   a. Who had many pots?
   b. Who had no pots?
   c. Why did the landlord first lend a pot to Dunba?
   d. When did the landlord first go to Dunba’s home?
   e. What had Dunba anticipated?
   f. Why was the landlord very surprised?
   g. What did the landlord’s wife think was unfortunate?
   h. Why did the landlord lend Dunba a gold pot?
   i. Why did Dunba break the gold pot into pieces?
   j. When the landlord visited Dunba, why was he excited?
   k. Why was the landlord astonished?
   l. Who was more clever—the landlord or Dunba? Why?

4. Put these words in the blanks below: landlord, Dunba, people, wife, he, them, his, him, you, she, your.

   a. A ______ had many pots.
   b. The poor ______ had no pots, but ______ was unwilling to lend any to ______.
   c. One day ______ went to the ______ to borrow a pot.
   d. ______ spoke very kindly to the ______, who finally lent ______ a pot on the condition that ______ return it in two days.
   e. Two days later the ______ came to ______’s home to take the pot.
   f. Anticipating the ______’s visit, ______ had put a small pot in the ______’s pot.
   g. When the _____ saw the small pot inside _______ larger pot _______ was very surprised.

•124•
h. _______ asked, “Where did this small pot come from?”
i. _______ said, “_______ pot had a baby.”
j. “Because this pot is yours, I am returning both pots to _______.”
k. The _______ was delighted and happily returned to _______ home.
l. Later _______ went again to the _______ ’s home to borrow a pot.
m. The _______ thought, “If I lend _______ one pot _______ will return two,” and happily lent _______ a big pot.

n. After a few days _______ put a small pot inside the large pot and returned the pot to the _______.

o. The _______ told _______ _______ about this. _______ said, “It’s very unfortunate that we did not lend _______ a gold pot.”
p. “If we lend_______ a gold pot many times we will become much richer.
q. Next time _______ wants a pot, lend _______ a gold one.”
r. The next time _______ asked to borrow a pot, the _______ insisted that _______ take a gold one.
s. As soon as _______ got home with the gold pot _______ broke the pot into many pieces. _______ gave the pieces to _______ who could not afford to buy a pot.
t. After some days, the_______ came to _______ ‘s home. _______ was excited because _______ thought _______ would be taking home two gold pots.
u. When _______ saw _______, _______ looked worried and miserable.
v. _______ asked _______ what had happened.
w. _______ said, “_______ had bad luck. _______ pot died.”
x. The astonished _______ demanded, “How is it possible that a pot could die?”
y. _______ said, “Why can’t _______ believe this?”
z. “Everything that gives birth also dies.”

aa. “_______, yaks, horses, sheep are all the same.”

bb. The _______ was very angry but _______ knew there was nothing _______ could do.

5. Mark these sentences T (true) or F (false).
a. The landlord was very clever. T F 
b. Dunba was very clever. T F 
c. The poor people could afford pots. T F 
d. The poor people got pieces of pots. T F 
e. Dunba had two small pots. T F 
f. The landlord’s wife was very kind. T F 
g. The landlord’s wife was greedy. T F 
h. This is a true story. T F 
i. Everything that gives birth does not die. T F 

6. What lesson does this story teach?
a. Poor men are very clever.
b. Sometimes poor men are more clever than rich men.
c. Rich men are very clever.
d. Rich men are not clever.
1. Vocabulary

- cave
- foolish
- frightened
- gullible
- so deep he could not get out
- could not fight and win
- just like I killed your mother
- cruel
- edible roots
- dig it up
- eagerly
- landed on top
- defeated

Baby Rabbit and Cruel Bear

केंद्रवर्णिणि
Mother Rabbit lived with her son, Baby Rabbit, in an old cave. This was near the home of Cruel Bear and her son, Foolish Bear.

Cruel Bear often beat Mother Rabbit and made her dig up edible roots. Mother Rabbit and Cruel Bear went to dig up edible roots in the early morning one warm spring day. Cruel Bear dug up half a bag of edible roots and then she slept on a big rock. Mother Rabbit continued digging.

At noon, Cruel Bear woke up. She was hungry. She saw Mother Rabbit now had two bags of edible roots. She said, “Today you have two bags of edible roots. I will take them.” Mother Rabbit was frightened. She took one bag of her edible roots and ran away. The bag was heavy so she ran slowly. Cruel Bear caught her near the opening of the old cave and killed her.

Poor Baby Rabbit cried in fear. Cruel Bear said to Baby Rabbit, “You must bring me a bag of edible roots. If you do not I will kill you just like I killed your mother,” and then she went to her cave.

Baby Rabbit was sad. He knew he could not fight Cruel Bear and win but suddenly he had an idea. He hopped to the bears’ cave and invited Foolish Bear to visit him. Before Foolish Bear left, Cruel Bear warned him to be careful.

Baby Rabbit and Foolish Bear entered Baby Rabbit’s home. Baby Rabbit said, “Mother hid a bag of edible roots under the floor. I’m tired and can’t dig it up. Why don’t you dig it up and take it to your home?”

Gullible Foolish Bear believed this and eagerly began digging. Meanwhile, Baby Rabbit ran away.

Foolish Bear was very strong and he soon was at the bottom of a hole that was so deep he could not get out. He felt tired and cried. Cruel Bear heard him and hurried into the old cave. It was dark inside so she could not see. She fell into the deep hole. She landed on top of her son and, because she was fat and heavy, this killed him.

The hole was so large that Cruel Bear could not climb out.

Three days later Baby Rabbit returned and saw Cruel Bear and her son in the deep hole. They both were dead. Baby Rabbit was now safe and lived a happy life.
h. She took one bag of her ___

g. She saw Mother Rabbit now ___

e. Mother Rabbit and Cruel Bear went to dig

   up ___

d. Cruel Bear often beat Mother Rabbit ___

c. Cruel Bear dug up half a bag of edible roots ___

b. Cruel Bear caught her near ___
a. “If you do not, I will kill you just like I ___

   (1) and made her dig up edible roots.
   (2) and then she slept on a big rock.
   (3) Baby Rabbit, in an old cave.
   (4) Bear and her son, Foolish Bear.
   (5) edible roots and ran away.
   (6) edible roots in the early morning one warm

       spring day.
   (7) had two bags of edible roots.
   (8) killed your mother,” and then she went to

       her cave.
   (9) the opening of the old cave and killed her.
4. Each sentence below is not correct. Write each sentence so that it is correct. The number after the sentence <> indicates how many mistakes the sentence has.

a. Foolish Bear was very weak. <2>
b. Mother Rabbit killed Cruel Bear. <3>
c. Mother Rabbit and Baby Rabbit lived in different caves. <1>
d. Cruel Bear killed Baby Rabbit. <3>
e. Cruel Bear dug edible roots for Mother Rabbit. <1>

5. These are the characters in the story. Match each character in Part I with a correct word or phrase in Part II below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Part I</th>
<th>Part II</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. Mother Rabbit</td>
<td>(1) was gullible ___</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. Baby Rabbit</td>
<td>(2) died ___</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. Cruel Bear</td>
<td>(3) lived a happy life ___</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d. Foolish Bear</td>
<td>(4) had a clever idea ___</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(5) could not get out of the deep hole ___</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(6) went away for three days ___</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(7) was hungry ___</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(8) invited Foolish Bear to his cave ___</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(9) was very sad ___</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(10) was very fat and heavy ___</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(11) killed her son ___</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6. What lesson does this story teach?

a. Rabbits may be easily **defeated** by bears.
b. Bears may be easily defeated by clever rabbits.
c. Bears are very fat and heavy.
d. Bears and rabbits both like to live in caves.
The Clever Ewe (ཆེན་མོན་མོའ་)

1. Vocabulary རིག་

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Tibetan</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Tibetan</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ewe</td>
<td>བདེ་གདོན།</td>
<td>must</td>
<td>ལོགས་པ་</td>
<td>clear water</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>antelope horn</td>
<td>རྟོན་པའི་ཐུབ</td>
<td>sickle</td>
<td>དབུག་</td>
<td>blacksmith</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wild yak meat</td>
<td>མབྱིེུ་</td>
<td>eagle’s wing</td>
<td>ལྕགས་ཞིག་</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Text རིག་

Long ago, a very clever ewe named Regemamao met a wolf. Wolf said that he wanted to eat her. “If you want to eat me, you must wash your hands and your mouth in clear water,” Regemamao said.

Wolf went to where there was usually clear water but now it was winter and the clear water had become ice. “If you want to wash your hands and mouth here, you must dig me with an antelope horn,” said Clear Water.

Wolf found an antelope. Antelope said, “If you want my horn, you must let the fastest dog catch me.”

Wolf found the fastest dog in the world. Dog said, “If you want me to catch Antelope, you must get me some milk.”

Wolf went to a yak and begged for some milk. Yak said, “If you want my milk, you must give me some good grass.”

Wolf found some good grass. Good Grass said, “If you want to cut me, you must use a sickle.”

Wolf found a blacksmith. Blacksmith said, “If you want me to make a sickle for you, you must give me some wild yak meat.”

Wolf found a wild yak and begged him for his meat. “If you want my meat, you must get me an eagle’s wing,” said Wild Yak.

Wolf noticed an eagle in the sky and shouted that he wanted one of his wings. Eagle replied, “If you give me a horse’s tail, I’ll give you one of my wings.”

Wolf found a horse and asked for his tail. Horse gave him his tail.

Wolf used the tail to get Eagle’s wing.
He took the wing to Wild Yak and Wild Yak gave him some meat.
He took the meat to Blacksmith who made a sickle.
Wolf used the sickle to cut some good grass and gave it to Yak.
Yak gave him some milk, which he gave to Dog.
Dog caught Antelope and Wolf took Antelope’s horn and used it to dig a hole in the ice.
However, when Wolf had finished washing his hands and mouth, Regemamao was gone.
3. Write answers to these questions.

a. What did the wolf first have to do?
b. In order to get clear water, what did he have to use?
c. To get the antelope’s horn, what did he have to do?
d. To get the fastest dog, what did he have to do?
e. To get yak milk, what did he have to do?
f. To get good grass, what did he have to do?
g. To get the wild yak meat, what did he have to do?
h. To get the eagle’s tail, what did he have to do?
i. Once he did all of those things, where was Regemamao?

4. Put these sentences in the correct order.

a. __ “If you want my meat, you must get me an eagle’s wing,” said Wild Yak.
b. __ “You must dig me with an antelope horn,” said Clear Water.
c. ___Antelope said, “If you want my horn, you must let the fastest dog catch me.”
d. ___Blacksmith said, “If you want a sickle, you must give me wild yak meat.”
e. ___Wolf took Antelope’s horn and used it to dig a hole in the ice.
f. ___Dog said, “If you want me to catch Antelope, you must get me some milk.”
g. ___Eagle replied, “If you give me a horse’s tail, I’ll give you one of my wings.”
h. ___Good Grass said, “If you want to cut me, you must use a sickle.”
i. ___He took the meat to Blacksmith who made a sickle.
j. ___He took the wing to Wild Yak and Wild Yak gave him some meat.
k. ___When Wolf had finished washing his hands and mouth, Regemamao was gone.
l. ___Wolf found a horse and asked for his tail. Horse gave him his tail.
m. ___Wolf used the sickle to cut some good grass and gave it to Yak.
n. ___Wolf used the tail to get Eagle’s wing.
o. ___Yak gave him some milk, which he gave to Dog.
p. ___Yak said, “If you want my milk, you must give me some good grass.”
5. Put these words in the blanks below:

: a, an, and, the, in, to, but, with, for.

a. _____ very clever ewe named Regemamao met _____ wolf.
b. Wolf said that he wanted _____ eat her.
c. “If you want _____ eat me, you wash your hands _____ your mouth _____ water.”
d. Wolf went _____ where there was usually clear water _____ now it was winter _____ clear water had become ice.
e. “If you want _____ wash your hands_____ mouth here, you must dig me ______ antelope horn,” said Clear Water.
f. Wolf found _____ antelope.
g. Antelope said, “If you want my horn, you must let _____ fastest dog catch me.”
h. Wolf found _____ fastest dog _____ world.
i. Dog said, “If you want me _____ catch Antelope, you must get me some milk.”
j. Wolf went ______ yak ____ begged _____ some milk.
k. Yak said, “If you want my milk, you must give me some good grass.”
l. Good Grass said, “If you want _____ cut me, you must use _____ sickle.”
m. Wolf found _____ blacksmith.

n. Blacksmith said, “If you want me _____ make _____ sickle _____ you, give me yak meat.”
o. Wolf found _____ wild yak _____ begged him _____ his meat.
p. “If you want my meat, you must get me _____ eagle’s wing,” said Wild Yak.
q. Wolf noticed ____ eagle _____ sky ____ shouted that he wanted one _____ his wings.
r. Eagle replied, “If you give me _____ horse’s tail, I’ll give you one _____ my wings.”
The Magic Chicken

1. Vocabulary

- magic: འབྲིེ་ཨོར། བུ་།
- wallet: དོན།
- squawking: ངངས་བུ་བུ་བུ་བུ། ངངས་བུ་བུ། ངངས་བུ་བུ། ངངས་བུ་བུ།
- coach: མོ་།
- extinguishing: ངངས་བུ་བུ་བུ་བུ། ངངས་བུ་བུ་བུ། ངངས་བུ་བུ་བུ། ངངས་བུ་བུ།
- as large as: ལ་གི་རླུང་བུའི། ལ་གི་རླུང་བུའི། ལ་གི་རླུང་བུའི། ལ་གི་རླུང་བུའི།
- flapping his wings: རྣམ་ཐོགས་ཐོགས་ཐོགས་ཐོགས་
- picked up: རོགས་།
- gentleman: སྤེན་།
- alongside: སྤེན་པ་། སྤེན་པ་།
- pesky: མི་ཁྱབ་ལེན་། མི་ཁྱབ་ལེན་། མི་ཁྱབ་ལེན་། མི་ཁྱབ་ལེན་།
- window ledge: གཉིས་ཐང་མི་ཐང་། གཉིས་ཐང་མི་ཐང་། གཉིས་ཐང་མི་ཐང་། གཉིས་ཐང་མི་ཐང་།
- stretched out: གཞི་ཐང་། གཞི་ཐང་། གཞི་ཐང་། གཞི་ཐང་།
- lovely: ངོ་། ངོ་། ངོ་། ངོ་།
A poor man had a clever and magic chicken.

One day this chicken picked up a wallet in the street.

A gentleman saw this and ordered his driver to take it away from Chicken.

Chicken angrily said, “Please give me my wallet.” He kept squawking this as he ran alongside the gentleman’s coach.

The gentleman said to his driver, “Throw that pesky chicken into that old well by the side of the road.”

The driver stopped the coach, caught Chicken, and threw Chicken into the well.

Chicken drank all the water in the well, jumped out of the well, ran after the coach, and squawked, “Please return my wallet!”

The gentleman stopped the coach, got out, grabbed Chicken, and got back in the coach.

When he got home, he put Chicken inside his stove and put a large rock on top so that Chicken could not get out. Chicken spat out all the water he had drunk, extinguishing the fire, flew out of the stove, landed on a window ledge, and squawked, “Give me my wallet!”

The gentleman told a servant, “Put that chicken with the yaks. Let them kill this horrible creature.” After Chicken was with the yaks, he ate them all and became as large as a hill. Chicken stretched out his wings, blocking the sunlight from the man’s house. The gentleman angrily took Chicken and put him in his moneybox. He thought that if Chicken ate all his coins he would die. Chicken ate all the gold coins but he did not die. Instead, he jumped out of the gold box and yelled, “Give me my wallet!”

The gentleman realized he could not defeat Chicken and gave him the wallet.

Chicken happily left.

When Chicken reached the poor man’s house, he shouted, “Master! Please put a rug on the floor immediately.” The poor man did so. Chicken began flapping his wings, filling the poor man’s yard with livestock and gold coins.

The poor man gave many gold coins and livestock to poor people. He also built a lovely house for himself and lived in peace and comfort for a long time.
3. Put these sentences in the correct order.

a.  ____ A gentleman saw this and ordered his driver to take it away from Chicken.
b.  ____ Chicken ate all the yaks and became as large as a hill.
c.  ____ Chicken angrily said, “Please give me my wallet.”
d.  ____ Chicken ate all the gold coins but he did not die.
e.  ____ Chicken began flapping his wings, filling the poor man’s yard with livestock and gold coins.
f.  ____ Chicken spat out all the water he had drunk.
g.  ____ One day this chicken picked up a wallet in the street.
h.  ____ The gentleman angrily took Chicken and put it in his moneybox.
i.  ____ The gentleman realized he could not defeat Chicken and gave him the wallet.
j.  ____ The gentleman said to his driver, “Throw that pesky chicken into that old well.”
k.  ____ The poor man gave many gold coins and livestock to poor people.
l.  ____ Chicken reached the poor man’s house and shouted.
m.  ____ When he got home he put Chicken inside his stove.
4. Put these words in the blanks below: in, the, a, on, to, of, and, into, by, from.

a. _____ poor man had _____ clever _____ magic chicken.
b. This chicken picked up _____ wallet _____ _____ street.
c. _____ gentleman saw this _____ ordered his driver _____ take it away _____ Chicken.
d. Chicken squawked this as he ran alongside _____ gentleman’s coach.
e. _____ gentleman said _____ his driver, “Throw that chicken _____ that old well _____ _____ side _____ _____ road.”
f. _____ driver stopped _____ coach, caught Chicken, _____ threw Chicken _____ _____ well.
g. Chicken drank all _____ water _____ _____ well, jumped _____ _____ _____ well, ran _____ _____ coach, _____ squawked.
h. _____ gentleman stopped _____ coach, got _____, grabbed Chicken,_____ got back _____ _____ coach.
i. He put Chicken _____ his stove _____ put _____ large rock _____ top.
j. Chicken spat _____ all _____ water it had drunk, extinguishing _____ fire, flew _____ _____ _____ _____ stove, _____ landed _____ _____ window ledge, _____ squawked.

5. Write answers to these questions.

a. What did a poor man have?
b. What did Chicken pick up?
c. Who took it away?
d. Where did the gentleman tell the driver to throw Chicken?
e. What did Chicken do in the well?
f. Where did the gentleman take Chicken?
g. Why did the gentleman have the servant put Chicken with the yaks?
h. What happened to the yaks?
i. When he stretched out his wings, what did he block?
j. Why did the gentleman put Chicken in the moneybox?
k. What did the gentleman realize?
l. When Chicken began flapping his wings, what happened?
m. What did the poor man do with the gold coins and the livestock?
1. Vocabulary

ran out of རུས། འཛིན།
puzzled མ་ལུགས།
inquired རུས། འཛིན་ཅིང་།
excellent སྤེན་པ་མཆོད། བསྟན་པ།
loaded འབྱུམ།
discovered རིག་པ།

trick him into འོ་བོ་གཡུ་བོ་།
burning རིང་། རྒྱལ།
expensive བོད་སྒྲབས།
filled with གླེང་བ།
sought refuge གྲུབ་མཆོད།
Many years ago, a poor man named Dongzhi had a rich neighbor. This neighbor had a lot of tsamba. He was also very greedy and never shared his tsamba with anyone.

One day Dongzhi ran out of tsamba and thought, “If I go to my neighbor’s house to ask for some tsamba, he will refuse. I need to trick him into giving me some.”

That evening Dongzhi took firewood to his garden and set it on fire. His rich neighbor noticed this and was puzzled. He went to Dongzhi’s house and inquired, “Why are you burning wood this evening, Dongzhi?”

Dongzhi said, “Yesterday I heard people saying tsamba in Lhasa is very expensive. So I will make some tsamba and go to Lhasa to sell it.”

The rich neighbor thought this was an excellent idea and said to Dongzhi, “My dear neighbor, can I go to Lhasa and sell tsamba with you?”

Dongzhi replied, “Of course.”

The next morning the rich man loaded a yak with two bags of tsamba. Dongzhi put two bags filled with grass and leaves on a donkey.

That evening on the road to Tibet the sky became dark. The two men sought refuge in a temple. The rich man was very tired and quickly fell asleep.

Dongzhi pretended to sleep. At midnight he got up and fed the grass and leaves in his bags to the donkey and the yak. Then he took the rich neighbor’s tsamba and poured it into his bags. Next, he put his neighbor’s empty bags in the temple deity’s hands and put some tsamba in the deity’s mouth.

The next morning the rich man discovered he had no tsamba. He saw his empty bags in the deity’s hands. He was frightened.

Dongzhi said, “Maybe the temple god was hungry and ate your tsamba. Just look at his mouth.”

The rich man sadly said, “Now I can’t go to Lhasa. I will return home. Please go to Lhasa by yourself.”

“I think I will also return home, I don’t want to go to Lhasa by myself,” Dongzhi said.
One day Dongzhi thought, “I need to trick him into giving me some tsamba.”
He went to Dongzhi’s house and inquired, “Why are you burning wood?”
He was also very greedy and never shared his tsamba.
Many years ago, a poor man named Dongzhi had a rich neighbor.
He put some tsamba in the deity’s mouth.
One day Dongzhi thought, “I need to trick him into giving me some tsamba.”
The next morning the rich man loaded a yak with two bags of tsamba.
The rich man sadly said, “Now I can’t go to Lhasa. Please go by yourself.”
The rich neighbor thought this was an excellent idea.

3. Put the sentences in the correct order. 

a. ___Dongzhi pretended to sleep.
b. ___Dongzhi said, “Maybe the temple god was hungry and ate your tsamba.”
c. ___Dongzhi said, “I heard people saying tsamba in Lhasa is very expensive.”
d. ___He saw his empty bags in the deity’s hands.
e. ___He was also very greedy and never shared his tsamba with anyone.
f. ___He went to Dongzhi’s house and inquired, “Why are you burning wood?”
g. ___Many years ago, a poor man named Dongzhi had a rich neighbor.
h. ___He put some tsamba in the deity’s mouth.
i. ___One day Dongzhi thought, “I need to trick him into giving me some tsamba.”
j. ___The next morning the rich man loaded a yak with two bags of tsamba.
k. ___The rich man sadly said, “Now I can’t go to Lhasa. Please go by yourself.”
l. ___The rich neighbor thought this was an excellent idea.
4. Put these words in the blanks below: of, with, out, to, for, on, in, into.

a. The neighbor had a lot _____ tsamba.
b. He never shared his tsamba _____ anyone.
c. Dongzhi ran_____ _____ tsamba and thought, “If I go _____ my neighbor’s house _____ ask _____ tsamba, he will refuse.”
d. “I need _____ trick him _____ giving me some.”
e. Dongzhi took firewood _____ his garden and set it _____ fire.
f. He went _____ Dongzhi’s house.
g. Dongzhi said, “Yesterday I heard people saying tsamba _____ Lhasa is very expensive.”
h. “I will make some tsamba and go _____ Lhasa _____ sell it.”
i. The rich neighbor said _____ Dongzhi, “My dear neighbor, can I go _____ Lhasa and sell tsamba _____ you?”
j. Dongzhi replied, “_____ course.”
k. The rich man loaded a yak _____ two bags of tsamba.
l. Dongzhi put two bags filled _____ grass and leaves _____ a donkey.
m. That evening _____ the road _____ Tibet the sky became dark.
n. The two men sought refuge _____ a temple.

5. Write answers to these questions.

a. Did the rich neighbor share his tsamba?
b. What did Dongzhi need to do to get his neighbor to give him tsamba?
c. Why was Dongzhi burning wood?
d. What did the rich man load his yak with?
e. What did Dongzhi load his yak with?
f. Where did the two men seek refuge?
g. At midnight what did Dongzhi do?
h. What did the rich man discover?
i. Did Dongzhi and his rich neighbor go to Tibet? Why or why not?
1. Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Tibetan</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>famous</td>
<td>སྤིན་པརེ།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>envious</td>
<td>བློ་སྣྱུར་བཤད།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carpenter</td>
<td>བཞིབ་དཔེ།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>platform</td>
<td>རྟོག་དུས།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beat gongs and drums</td>
<td>རྣམ་སྦྱོང་འབྲུལ།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dug a tunnel</td>
<td>རྟགས་རྟགས།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wood was stacked</td>
<td>རྒྱ་ཆུ་བོད།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The same way that I did.</td>
<td>རྟགས་རྟགས།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set afire</td>
<td>རྟགས་རྟགས།</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

artist སྤིན་པར།
town leader ཤྱུད།
deity སྤིན།
needs to be fixed རྟག་འབྲུལ།
platform རྟག་དུས།
to last a month རྟག་འབྲུལ།
screams རྟག་འབྲུལ།
replied རྟག་འབྲུལ།
Long ago a town had a famous artist named Genga. He was very clever but he had a very big problem: he was envious. He was the town leader and he did not want anyone as clever as he to live in the town.

Several years later a carpenter moved to the town. His name was also Genga. He was very clever. He did everything well and became famous as a carpenter. This made Artist Genga so unhappy that he decided to kill Carpenter Genga.

One day Artist Genga visited Carpenter Genga and said, “My dear Genga, last night I dreamed of a deity that told me seven days from now you will be sent to their palace because it needs to be fixed.”

Carpenter Genga asked, “How do I get there?”

“You will sit on a platform and then we will put wood around you and beat gongs and drums,” Artist Genga said.

Carpenter Genga agreed but he knew that this was Artist Genga’s plan to kill him. During the next seven days, Carpenter Genga dug a tunnel from under his house to under the platform. He put enough food in the tunnel to last a month.

On the seventh day, Artist Genga went to the place where the platform was. He saw Carpenter Genga sitting on the platform. After wood was stacked around Carpenter Genga, Artist Genga ordered the people to light a fire. When the fire was burning, he ordered the people to beat gongs and drums. He did not want anyone to hear Carpenter Genga’s screams as he died in the fire. However, Carpenter Genga had already escaped and was in his tunnel.

A month later Carpenter Genga came out of his tunnel and walked to Artist Genga’s home. He said, “I have finished my work. The deity told me to send you there to paint the palace.”

Artist Genga was very surprised to see Carpenter Genga alive and asked, “How do I get there?”

“The same way that I did,” replied Carpenter Genga.

“When?” asked Artist Genga.

“Tomorrow,” replied Carpenter Genga.

Artist Genga believed this. The next day he sat on the same platform, wood was set afire around him, and he died.
3. Put these words in the blanks below: a, the, and, but, to, as, on, in.

a. Long ago ____ town had ____ famous artist named Genga.
b. He was very clever ___ he had ___ very big problem: he was envious.
c. He was ___ town leader ___ he didn’t want anyone ___ clever ___ he ___ live ___ ___ town.
d. Several years later ___ carpenter moved ____ town.
e. He did everything well ___ became famous ____ carpenter.
f. He decided ___ kill Carpenter Genga.
g. Artist Genga visited Carpenter Genga ___ said, “My dear Genga, last night I dreamed of ___ deity that said you will be sent ____ their palace because it needs ___ be fixed.”
h. “You will sit ____ ____ platform ____ then we will put wood around you ___ beat gongs ____ drums,” Artist Genga said.
i. Carpenter Genga agreed ___ he knew that this was Artist Genga’s plan ____ kill him.
j. During ____ next seven days Carpenter Genga dug ____ tunnel from under his house ____ under ____ platform. He put enough food ____ ____ tunnel ____ last ____ month.
4. Put these sentences in the correct order.

c. “When?” asked Artist Genga.
d. Carpenter Genga came out of his tunnel and walked to Artist Genga’s home.
e. Artist Genga ordered the people to light a fire.
f. Artist Genga believed this.
g. Artist Genga asked in surprise, “How do I get there?”
h. He didn’t want anyone to hear Carpenter Genga’s screams as he died in the fire.
i. He said, “I have finished my work.”
j. He saw Carpenter Genga sitting on the platform.
k. However, Carpenter Genga had already escaped and was in his tunnel.
l. On the seventh day Artist Genga went to the place where the platform was.
m. ”The deity told me to send you there to paint the palace.”
n. He sat on the same platform, wood was set afire around him, and he died.
o. When the fire was burning, he ordered the people to beat gongs and drums.

5. This summary of the story has nine mistakes. See if you can find them. After you find them, write all the sentences correctly.

(a) Three men named Genga lived in the countryside. (b) Carpenter Genga was very jealous and did not like Artist Genga. (c) Artist Genga wanted to kill Carpenter Genga. (d) Artist Genga told some people to shoot Carpenter Genga. (e) Carpenter Genga did not die. (f) He stayed in a big tree for one week. (g) Then he went to Artist Genga’s school. (h) Finally, Artist Genga and Carpenter Genga became very good friends.

6. Each of these sentences has mistakes. Write the sentences correctly and then read the text again.

a. Carpenter Genga agreeing but he knewed that this was Artist Genga’s plan to kills him.
b. During the next seven day Carpenter Genga digging a tunnel from under his houses to under the platform’s.
c. He putting enough food on the tunnel to lasting month.
d. Under an seventh day Artist Genga going to the place where the platform am.
e. He seeing Carpenter Genga sitting in the platform.
f. After wood am stacking around Carpenter Genga, Artist Genga ordering the peoples to light them fire.
g. When them fire burning, he ordering a people to beat gongs and drumming.

7. What lesson does this story teach?

a. It is not possible for carpenters and artists to be friends.
b. Artists and carpenters can be good friends.
c. If you do bad things you may be punished.
d. If you do good things you will always be very happy.
The Horned King

1. Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Tibetan</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sprouted out</td>
<td>ཡིགན་ལུང།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unfortunate</td>
<td>སྨོན་འབྲིང་སྨོན་འབྲིང་།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>roasted</td>
<td>རོོང་།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mother’s milk</td>
<td>ཁམས་ལྟེས།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nevertheless</td>
<td>ཐ་དང་།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cured</td>
<td>རོྷོན་ལྟེས་།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>remote place</td>
<td>ལུགས་ཞེན་། ལུགས་ཞེན་།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mixed</td>
<td>དབྱིབས།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cheese</td>
<td>ོད་།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>surely</td>
<td>ལྷེས་པར་བེད།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>say…aloud</td>
<td>རུ་ལེགས་མི་བཟོ།</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
King Langdarma did not want anyone to know his terrible secret—horns sprouted out of his head. When he needed a haircut, he took a person to a remote place. After this person cut his hair, he killed him.

One day a boy went to visit the King. The King said, “Tomorrow, please come and cut my hair.” The boy happily replied, “Of course.” The boy went home and told his mother what the King had asked him to do.

His mother sadly said, “This is unfortunate.” She knew that the King would kill her son. The next morning she mixed butter, roasted barley flour, cheese, sugar, and a little milk tea together. She gave it to her son and said, “When you go to the King to cut his hair, eat this tsamba. The King will surely ask you what you are eating. Then give him a little. After he eats it, tell him it contains mother’s milk and he won’t kill you.”

The boy went to the King and did as his mother told him. The King said, “It’s very delicious. Do you have more of this delicious food?”

The boy replied, “Yes, I do,” and gave the King more tsamba.

After the King finished eating he asked, “What is this tsamba made of?”

The boy said, “Great King, this tsamba is made of mother’s milk, butter, roasted barley flour, sugar, and cheese.”

The King replied, “After a person cuts my hair, I usually kill him because I don’t want anyone to know my secret. Nevertheless, you and I have drunk the same mother’s milk. Now we are like the same mother’s sons so I will not kill you. Please go home and don’t tell anyone my secret.”

When the boy returned home, his mother was delighted that her son was still alive. However, some days later he became very ill. No medicine helped him.

The mother asked a monk to look at the boy. When the monk visited he said, “You have a secret. You must go to a remote place and say your secret aloud. Then you will be well.”

The boy went to a remote place and said, “King Langdarma has horns on his head! King Langdarma has horns on his head!”

The boy said this and then he was cured. The animals, flowers, grass, and wind heard this and told everybody."
Part I

a. King Langdarma did not want anyone to know his terrible secret ___
b. She knew that ___
c. The animals, flowers, grass, and wind ___
d. The boy said, “Great King, this tsamba is made of mother’s milk, ___
e. The boy went to the King ___
f. The King said, “It’s very delicious. ___
g. The King said, “Tomorrow, please come ___
h. The mother asked ___
i. The next morning she mixed butter, roasted barley flour, ___
j. When the boy returned home, ___

Part II

1. —horns sprouted out of his head.
2. a monk to look at the boy.
3. and cut my hair.”
4. and did as his mother told him.
5. butter, roasted barley flour, sugar, and cheese.”
6. cheese, sugar, and a little milk tea together.
7. Do you have more of this delicious food?”
8. heard this and told everybody.
9. his mother was delighted that her son was still alive.
10. the King would kill her son.

4. Write answers to these questions.

a. What was the king’s secret?
b. What did the king ask the boy to do?
c. Why did his mother say it was unfortunate?
d. What did she give him to take to the king?
e. Why didn’t the king kill the son?
f. What did the monk tell the boy to do?
g. What did the boy shout?
h. Who carried the secret?

5. Crossword

Across
4. Horns _______ _______ of his head.
7. His mother sadly said, “This is ______.”

Down
1. She _____ butter, roasted barley flour, cheese, sugar, and a little milk tea together.
2. The boy said this and then he was ______
3. “… the King will _____ ask you what you are eating…”
5. “Go to a ______ place and (4)_____ your secret (4)_____. Then you will be well.”
6. “This tsamba is made of mother’s milk, butter, ______ barley flour, sugar, and cheese.”
Two Lazy Men (སེམས་བརྙན་པོ་)

I. Vocabulary བོད་ཀུན

basking in the sun རྣམ་བརྒྱུར།
depended on རེག་དེའི།
consequently འར་བརྩེ།
tramps གནོན་པོ།
discussed (talked about) བོད་ཀུན་བོད་ཀུན།
Paradise རིགས་མོ།
ladder ོར།
eagle རོ།
thumb རྡོད་ཞི།
nest གནས།
approval ལྷུན།
grabbed བྱུང་།
lumps རྒྱུད།
flesh རྙིང་།
elephant ནག་ཚེ།
Zhaxi and Caireng were so lazy that they never worked. Instead, they sat at the bottom of a wall everyday, *basking in the sun*. They *depended on* their parents for everything *consequently*, their parents *scolded* them. They became tired of this, left their homes, and became *tramps*.

During their *travels*, they would go without food for a few days and then become very hungry. One day they sat by a fire and *discussed* what they would do next. Caireng said, “We should go where work is not needed and there is enough food to eat and there are beautiful clothes to wear. But I don’t know where such a place is.”

Zhaxi said, “Who knows? I don’t think there is such a happy place in the world, but I heard *Paradise* is a very happy place.”

Caireng smiled and said, “Let’s go there. Why must we stay where people laugh at us and we must work for a living?”

“That’s a good idea, but how can we go to Paradise? How can we find such a tall *ladder*?” asked Zhaxi.

“Even without a ladder we can get there,” replied Caireng confidently.

“What are you thinking? Please tell me!” exclaimed Zhaxi.

“Look,” said Caireng and pointed at a huge *eagle* flying above the mountains and valleys. “I saw this kind of bird when I was very small. If we hold on to this big eagle, it will take us to Paradise.” Zhaxi looked at Caireng, thrust up his *thumb in approval*, and said, “What a great idea. We can do it!”

The next morning the two men climbed happily to the mountaintop and looked for the big eagle’s *nest*. After they found it they hid nearby and patiently waited for the eagle’s return. At dusk, when the big eagle returned, Zhaxi grabbed the eagle’s feet and shouted to Caireng, “*Grab* my feet!”

The startled eagle flapped up into the blue sky. Caireng’s hands soon grew tired holding onto Zhaxi’s feet. “*Is Paradise near?*” asked Caireng.

Zhaxi looked up and replied, “*It’s not far. I can see a hole leading to Paradise.*” This made Caireng very happy.

“What size is that hole and will we fit through it?” asked Caireng.

“This big!” Zhaxi gestured, forgetting that he was holding on to the eagle. Then they both fell to the ground and became two *lumps* of broken *flesh*. 
3. Write questions for these answers.

a. Zhaxi and Caireng were lazy. (Who…?)
b. They left home because their parents scolded them. (What…?)
c. Because they went without food for a few days. (Why…?)
d. Zhaxi and Caireng wanted to go to a place where no one had to work. (Where…?)
e. They thought an eagle would take them there. (What…?)
f. Zhaxi grabbed the eagle’s feet. (What…?)
g. They became two lumps of broken flesh. (Who…?)
h. They did not go to Paradise. (Did…?)
i. Because Zhaxi let go of the eagle’s legs. (Why…?)

4. Put these sentences in the correct order.

a. “That’s a good idea, but how can we go to Paradise?” ___
b. But I don’t know where such a place is.” ___
c. During their travels they would go without food for a few days. ___
d. How can we find such a tall ladder?” asked Zhaxi. ___
e. Instead they sat at the bottom of a wall everyday. ___
f. One day they sat by a fire and discussed what they would do next. ___
g. Zhaxi and Caireng were so lazy that they never worked. ___
h. Zhaxi said, “I heard Paradise is a very happy place.” ___
i. They became tired of this, left their homes, and became tramps. ___
j. Their parents scolded them. ___
k. Caireng said, “We should go where work is not needed.” ___
l. Caireng smiled and said, “Let’s go there.” ___
m. “Why must we stay where we must work for a living?” ___
5. Each sentence below has one mistake. Write the word that is not correct and a correct word to replace it.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sentence</th>
<th>Wrong Word</th>
<th>Right Word</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>“Look,” said Caireng and pointed at a huge elephant flying above the mountains.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“I saw this kind of horse when I was very small.”</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“If we hold on to this small eagle, it will take us to Paradise.”</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zhaxi looked at Caireng, thrust up his foot in approval, and said, “What a great idea.”</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The next morning the two men climbed sadly to the mountaintop and looked for the big eagle’s nest.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>After they found it they hid nearby and impatiently waited for the eagle’s return.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>At dusk, when the big eagle returned, Zhaxi grabbed the eagle’s feet and shouted to Caireng, “Grab my head!”</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The happy eagle flapped up into the blue sky.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caireng’s hands soon grew tired holding onto Zhaxi’s arms.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“Is home near?” asked Caireng.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zhaxi looked down and replied, “It’s not far.”</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“I can see a road leading to Paradise.”</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>This making Caireng very happy.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6. Mark these sentences T (true) or F (false).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Statement</th>
<th>True or False</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. The eagle took the two men to Paradise.</td>
<td>T F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. The two men were hard working.</td>
<td>T F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. The eagle flew in the air with the two men.</td>
<td>T F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d. Caireng and Zhaxi’s parents were cruel.</td>
<td>T F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e. Zhaxi and Caireng wanted to go to Paradise.</td>
<td>T F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f. Zhaxi and Caireng died at the end of the story.</td>
<td>T F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g. The eagle wanted to help the two men.</td>
<td>T F</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7. What lesson does this story teach?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lesson</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. Don’t be lazy.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. Lazy people will have an easy life.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. Men are stronger than eagles.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d. Lazy people like to climb mountains.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The Dead Pigeon

1. Vocabulary

- pigeon (བོད།)
- borrowed (བོད།)
- in no mood (བོད།)
- blushed (བོད།)
- revenge (བོད།)
- squatted (བོད།)
- chant scriptures (བོད།)
- kowtowed (བོད།)
- sheep’s skin (བོད།)
- merrily (བོད།)
- fierce (བོད།)
- efficacious (བོད།)
- recite (བོད།)
- shocked (བོད།)
- monastery (བོད།)
- to attack (བོད།)
A son asked a monk to come chant scriptures because his mother was very ill. The monk said, “My chanting is very efficacious and your mother will be well soon.” The son believed the monk, borrowed some money, butter, and tsamba from his relatives, and gave them to the monk. When the monk finished his chanting the mother was dead.

The son sadly said, “Why is my mother dead?”

The monk noticed some pigeons flying in the sky and said, “Your mother has already changed to one of those pigeons flying in the sky.” The son felt happy and kowtowed to the sky.

When Uncle Dunba heard what the monk had done and said, he angrily went to the temple, found the monk, and said, “My mother is dead. Please come to my home and recite scriptures.”

The monk agreed. As they were walking to Uncle Dunba’s house, the monk asked him to tell him a joke. Uncle Dunba angrily replied, “My mother is dead and I am in no mood to tell jokes!”

When they reached Uncle Dunba’s home, the monk asked, “Where is your mother?”

Uncle Dunba sadly pointed to something covered with a sheep’s skin and said, “There!” When the monk removed the sheep’s skin, he saw a dead pigeon. He was shocked.

Uncle Dunba calmly said, “Oh, my mother changed into a pigeon and flew into the sky!” The monk, and said, “My chanting is very efficacious and your mother will be well soon.” The son believed the monk, and wanted revenge. Uncle Dunba had borrowed a pot from the monastery and he and the other monks decided that they would beat Uncle Dunba when he returned it.

A few days later Uncle Dunba started to the monastery with the pot. He knew the monks wanted to punish him so he had made some small holes in the bottom of the pot with a nail. When he reached the monastery gate, the monks ordered four fierce dogs to attack him.

Uncle Dunba squatted on the ground so the pot covered his entire body. He could see through the holes he had made. The dogs tried to bite through the pot, could not, and finally gave up.

When Uncle Dunba reached the monastery, he sadly said, “What a pity! Look, the four dogs have put so many holes in it.”

The monks realized what Uncle Dunba had done but could say nothing.
3. Put the sentences in the correct order.

a. ____ A son asked a monk to come chant scriptures because his mother was very ill.
b. ____ He made holes in the pot bottom.
c. ____ The dogs tried to bite through the pot, could not, and finally gave up.
d. ____ The monk said, “Your mother has changed to a pigeon flying in the sky.”
e. ____ The monk said, “My chanting is efficacious and your mother will be well soon.”
f. ____ The monk was very angry when he returned to his monastery and wanted revenge.
g. ____ The son borrowed money, butter, and tsamba from his relatives.
h. ____ Uncle Dunba calmly said, “Oh, my mother changed into a pigeon!”
i. ____ Uncle Dunba had borrowed a pot from the monastery.
j. ____ Uncle Dunba laughed merrily and said, “You told me to tell you a joke.”
k. ____ Uncle Dunba squatted on the ground so the pot covered his entire body.
l. ____ When the monk finished his chanting the mother was dead.
m. ____ When the monk removed the sheep’s skin, he saw a dead pigeon.
n. ____ Uncle Dunba angrily went to the temple and found the monk.
o. ____ Uncle Dunba said, “The dogs have put so many holes in it.”
4. Crossword

Across

2. When the monk removed the sheep’s skin, … He was ________.
4. When the monk removed the sheep’s skin, he saw a dead ________.
7. The son felt happy and ________ to the sky.
8. The son ________ed money, butter, and tsamba from his relatives.
9. When he reached the monastery, the monks ordered four ________ dogs to attack him.
10. Uncle Dunba said, “My mother became a pigeon and flew into the sky!” The monk ________.

Down

1. A son asked a monk to come ________ scriptures.
3. The monk said, “My chanting is very ________.”
5. Uncle Dunba replied, “My mother is dead and I am ________ to tell jokes!”
6. …the monks ordered four fierce dogs to ________ him.

5. Write answers to these questions. अनुदानमा उत्तरहरू लिएका

a. Why did the son ask the monk to chant scriptures?
b. What did the son give the monk?
c. When the monk was finished chanting, was the son’s mother alive?
d. What did the monk say the mother had turned into?
e. What did Uncle Dunba do when he heard what the monk did?
f. As they were walking to Uncle Dunba’s home, what did the monk ask him?
g. Where was Uncle Dunba’s “mother”?
h. When the monk removed the sheep skin, what did he find?
i. What did the monk and the other monks decide to do?
j. What did Uncle Dunba do with the pot?
k. What did he say happened to the pot?
1. Vocabulary

animal bones  མགྲིན་པ།
silly ཀུར་པ།
whom ཞལ།

monster གཏན་པོ། བཞི།
clearly གཏན་དཔག།
descended སྒོམ་པོ།

businessman རྟེན།
flesh མི་ས་
moaning in pain ཤུན་ཞིང་བུ་བུ།
A fat doctor died, leaving behind three sons. The youngest and cleverest son said to his two older brothers, “Our father was killed. I’m going to find our enemy and kill him.” He left and climbed the highest nearby mountain. In a cave on the mountain, he found animal bones and meat. He sat down and waited to see who would return to the cave.

Some time later a monster came and asked, “Who are you?”

“I’m your brother,” Youngest Brother answered.

Gullible Monster thought, “I never knew I had a brother,” and let Youngest Brother stay with him. Some days later they noticed a businessman driving three hundred yaks in the valley below. The first yak was very fat. Monster wanted to kill it but said he did not know. Youngest Brother said, “You are silly. I’ll kill it,” and left. A short time later Youngest Brother returned carrying the yak meat.

Monster said, “I thought I was very strong but you are clearly stronger than I am.”

Youngest Brother said, “This meat is very fat. I’ve never seen meat like this before.”

Monster said, “I have. I killed a fat doctor who had three sons. His flesh was fatter than this yak’s.”

Youngest Brother now understood whom he needed to kill but he said nothing.

The next day Youngest Brother descended the mountain, met his brothers, and said, “I found our enemy. A monster lives in a cave on a tall mountain. Everyday he walks near here. Tomorrow when he comes, beat him and then let him go.”

The next morning as Monster passed near the brothers’ home the two older brothers caught him, beat him, and then let him go. Monster ran back to the mountain cave, moaning in pain.

Youngest Brother asked, “What happened?”

Monster said, “Two boys beat me.”

Youngest Brother said, “I will fight those two boys but I need a good metal box.”

Monster ran outside and came back with a metal box. Youngest Brother said, “Please open this box and I will get inside. If I can’t get out I know it is strong enough to hold those two boys.” Monster opened the box. Youngest Brother got inside and found that the box was very strong. He could not get out. He then asked Monster to open the box and got out.

“No, you please get in the box. You are stronger than I am. Let’s see how strong the box is,” said Youngest Brother.

After Monster got in the box Youngest Brother locked it and never opened it again.
He sat down ______ waited ______ see who would return ______ ______ cave.

3. Put these words in the blanks below: a, the, behind, to, in, on, with, below, nearby.

a. ______ fat doctor died, leaving ______ three sons.

b. ______ youngest ______ cleverest son said ______ his two older brothers, “I’m going ______ find our enemy ______ kill him.”

c. He left ______ climbed ______ highest ______ mountain. ______ ______ cave ______ ______ mountain, he found animal bones ______ meat.

d. He sat down ______ waited ______ see who would return ______ ______ cave.
e. Later ______ monster came ______ asked, “Who are you?”
g. They noticed ______ businessman driving three hundred yaks ______ valley ______.
h. _____ first yak was very fat.
i. Monster wanted _____ kill it.
j. Youngest Brother said, “I’ll kill it,” _____ left.
k. _____ short time later Youngest Brother returned carrying _____ yak meat.

4. Put the sentences in the correct order.

a. __ “Now you please get in the box,” said Youngest Brother.
b. ___A fat doctor died, leaving behind three sons.
c. ___After Monster got in the box Youngest Brother locked it and never opened it again.
d. __He then asked Monster to open the box and got out.
e. ___Monster said, “Two boys beat me.”
f. ___Monster said, “I have. I killed a fat doctor with three sons.”
g. ___Some days later they noticed a businessman driving three hundred yaks in the valley below.
h. ___Some time later a monster came and asked, “Who are you?”
i. ___The next morning the two older brothers caught the monster.
j. ___The youngest said to his two older brothers, “I’m going to find our enemy and kill him.”
k. ___Youngest Brother asked, “What happened?”
l. ___Youngest Brother now understood whom he needed to kill but he said nothing.
m. ___Youngest Brother said, “I will fight those two boys but I need a good metal box.”
n. ___Youngest Brother said, “Please open this box and I will get inside.”
o. ___Youngest Brother said, “This meat is very fat. I’ve never seen meat like this before.”

5. Write answers to these questions.

a. What did youngest son say he would do?
b. What did he find in the cave?
c. Did the youngest son tell the monster that he was his brother?
d. Who killed the yak?
e. Whose flesh was fatter than the yak’s?
f. What did the two older brothers do to the monster?
g. What did Youngest Brother need?
h. What did Youngest Brother lock the monster in?
The Foolish Judge

1. Vocabulary

judge གསུམ་

ordinary གསུམ་

dumplings ཞུང་

prepared supper གསུམ་བཤད་

sleeping flower གཞི་ཤུང་

shaved off འབང་

courtyard རྒྱུ་

wondered གཞི་ཤུང་

touched རྒྱུ་

beard འབང་

pounded on རྒྱུ་

you’d better (you had better) གཞི་ཤུང་

puzzled རྒྱུ་

led a life གཞི་ཤུང་
A judge’s wife wanted her husband to travel all over the local area to see and learn about ordinary people’s lives. One evening the judge came home from his work and asked his wife to make dumplings for supper. She said, “It will take a long time to make dumplings. You are tired now because you worked without rest all day. Please rest on the bed. When I have prepared supper, I will wake you up.”

The judge agreed and was soon asleep. His wife then put a sleeping flower near his pillow, ordered some servants to carry her husband outside into the yard, and then shaved off his beard.

When he woke up, he saw the sky and realized that he was in the courtyard. He wondered how he had gotten there. He touched his face and realized his beard was gone. He was frightened. He wondered, “Who am I? Am I the judge? I’ll knock on the door. If I’m the judge, they will let me in.”

He stood up, went to the door, and knocked. “Who are you?” a servant asked.

“I’m the judge,” the judge replied.

“You are a judge from what family?” asked the servant. “Our judge is sleeping.” Then the servant closed the door.

The judge angrily pounded on the door. Another servant opened the door and said, “You’d better get away from our house or our judge will hear you.” The servant looked carefully at the judge’s face and said, “Everybody knows that our judge has a beard.”

The puzzled judge walked around the courtyard and thought, “Since I’m not the judge, why do I need to stay here?” He decided to leave and go somewhere else.

After walking for many days, he reached a big city and led a life of poverty and hunger.

The days went by.

After a year, his beard had grown out again. He decided to go home. After many days of walking, he entered his courtyard. His feet were in such pain that he lay down on the courtyard and fell asleep. Later a servant came into the courtyard. She saw the judge sleeping and told the judge’s wife. The judge’s wife put a sleeping flower near the judge, ordered some servants to make dumplings, and ordered other servants to put the judge on his bed.

After awhile the judge woke up, looked around, and said, “I was in the yard. How did I get here?”

His wife said, “You are confused. You just got home and asked me to prepare some dumplings. Supper is ready. Now, let’s eat.”

“How strange! I feel like I have been away for a year. How did I get home?” asked the judge.

“You have had a long dream,” said his wife.

The judge ate the dumplings and thought about his strange dream.
3. Match phrases from Part I and Part II to make correct sentences.

**PART I**

a. “I feel as though I have ___
b. “You have had ___
c. After awhile the judge woke up, looked around, ___
d. After many days of walking, ___
e. After walking for many days, he reached a big city ___
f. He stood up, went to the door, ___
g. His feet were in such pain that he ___
h. His wife then put a sleeping flower near his pillow, ___
i. One evening the judge came home from his work and ___
j. The judge angrily ___
k. The judge’s wife put a sleeping flower near the judge, ___
l. The puzzled judge walked around the courtyard ___
m. The servant looked carefully at the judge’s face ___
n. When he woke up, he saw the sky and ___

**PART II**

1. a long dream,” said his wife.
2. and knocked.
3. and led a life of poverty and hunger.
4. and said, “Everybody knows that our judge has a beard.”
5. and said, “I was in the yard. How did I get here?”
6. and thought, “Since I’m not the judge, why do I need to stay here?”
7. asked his wife to make dumplings for supper.
8. been away for a year. How did I get home?” asked the judge.
9. he entered his courtyard.
10. lay down on the courtyard and fell asleep.
11. ordered some servants to carry her husband outside into the yard, and then shaved off his beard.
12. ordered some servants to make dumplings.
13. pounded on the door.
14. realized that he was in the courtyard.

4. Circle the correct words.

a. A judge’s wife wanted her/his husband to travel every/all over the local area.
b. The judge came home from her/his work and asked her/his wife to make dumplings.
c. Her/His wife put a flower near his pillow, ordered servants to carry her/his husband outside into the yard, and shaved off her/his beard.
d. He wondered how he/him had gotten there.
e. He touched her/his face and realized her/his beard was gone.
f. After many days of walking, she/he entered his courtyard.
g. “You have had a long dream,” said her/his wife.
5. Crossword

Across
2. The ______ judge walked around the courtyard.
4. The servant said, “Everybody knows that our judge has a ______.”
7. The judge angrily ______ the door.

Down
1. The______ came home from his work and asked his wife to make dumplings for supper.
3. She wanted her husband to learn about ______people’s lives.
5. He ______ed, “Who am I?”
6. He ______ed his face and realized his beard was gone.

6. Write answers to these questions.

a. What did the judge’s wife want him to do?
b. What did she put near his pillow?
c. What did she order the servants to do?
d. When the judge woke up, what was gone?
e. What did the servant say his judge was doing?
f. In the big city, what type of life did the judge lead?
g. What did his wife say happened to him?
1. Vocabulary

herd of horses ལྷེས་པ།

wonderful གཏེར་བསལ།

ran everywhere རང་བསལ།

arrogant ཡོག་ཏུ་བསལ།

lied ཟེན་བསལ།

weeds ཐེས་

thirsty འབྲིང་རྟེན་།

pool བྲག་

mud རྟེན་

sank སྐོར་

stuck more deeply སྐོར་སྐོར་བསལ།

jerked and jerked ཀྲུང་ལྕེན་ཆེནས།

neighed སྐོར། (མོ་བཞི་)

ignored གནང་བཞི།

disappeared རང་བཞི།

horizon རང་ཙམ་བཞི།

delighted འཛོམས་སྐྱེད།

meat སྐབས་

blood སྐོང་།

nevertheless འབྲིང་རྟེན།

gently སྐོར་

scriptures གཏན་

kicked འོག་སྤྱིིལ།

hooves འབྲིང་རྟེན་།

gullible སྐོར་སྐོར།

kicked འོག་སྤྱིིལ།

seriously injured འབྲིང་རྟེན་སྐྱེད།

groaned གནང་

raced away as fast as a bird flies རང་བཞི་ཆེན་བྱ།

shook like a leaf in the wind འབྲིང་རྟེན་མེའི་བཞི་

The Tricky Horse

དབང་གུམ།
Long ago, a herd of horses lived on a wonderful grassland. They ran everywhere they liked.

White Horse was very clever and very beautiful. But he was arrogant because he was the strongest and fastest of all the horses. Sometimes he lied to the other horses. After some time the other horses did not believe anything he said.

One hot day the horses were walking across the grassland. White Horse saw many weeds growing around a pool of clean water. He was very thirsty. He left the herd and ran toward the pool as fast as he could. He did not see the mud under the weeds. Suddenly his feet sank into the mud. He knew he must get out. He jerked and jerked his legs but this made him get stuck more deeply in the mud.

He neighed to his friends. He really needed their help, but they thought he was lying and ignored him. They went on walking away and disappeared over the horizon.

White Horse waited for someone to help him. Some time later a hungry wolf came to the pool to drink. Wolf saw White Horse caught in the mud. This made him very happy.

White Horse was very afraid but he thought, “If I don’t think of something soon, Wolf will eat me.” Wolf was delighted to see White Horse stuck in the mud. When Wolf got near White Horse he said, “Today I am very lucky. I can eat much meat and drink much blood.”

When White Horse heard this, he shook like a leaf in the wind. Nevertheless, he smiled and gently asked, “Uncle Wolf, may I help you in some way?”

Wolf said, “I want to eat you.”

White Horse said, “That’s fine! But now my feet are stuck in the mud. I am very dirty. If you really do want to eat me, first you must get me out of the mud and wash my body. Then I will taste much better.”

Wolf thought, “What he said is true. He will taste better when he is clean.” Wolf worked hard to get the horse out of the mud and then he washed his body.

After doing this Wolf asked, “Now is it okay if I eat you?”

White Horse sadly answered, “Of course it is. But because my life is about to end, I want to know the meaning of the scriptures written on my hooves. I can’t see them. Can you please take a look and read them to me?”

The gullible wolf thought, “He will die soon so I will do this for him.” Then Wolf lifted up White Horse’s right foot. Just at that moment, White Horse kicked Wolf in the head and raced away as fast a bird flies.

The poor wolf’s head was seriously injured. As he lay on the grass, he groaned because he knew he would soon die.
(a) ______ was very afraid but he thought, “If (b) ______ don’t think of something soon, (c) ______ will eat me.” (d) ______ was delighted to see (e) ______ stuck in (f) ______ mud. When (g) ______ got near (h) ______ he said, “Today (i) ______ am very lucky.” (j) “_____ can eat much meat.” When (k) ______ heard this, he shook like a leaf in (l) ______ wind. He gently asked, “Uncle (m)______, may (n) ______ help you in some way?” (o) ______ said, (p) “_____ want to eat you.” White Horse said, “Now my feet are stuck in (q) ______ mud.” (r) ______ am very dirty.” “You must get me out of (s) ______ mud and wash my body.” “Then (t) ______ will taste much better.” (u) ______ thought, “What he said is true.” (v) ______ worked hard to get (w) ______ horse out of (x) ______ mud. After doing this (y) ______ asked, “Now is it okay if (z) ______ eat you?” (aa) ______ sadly answered, “Of course.” (bb) ______ want to know (cc) ______ meaning of (dd) ______ scriptures written on my hooves.” (ee) “_____ can’t see them.”

3. Put these words in the blanks below. White Horse, Wolf, the, I.

(a) ______ was very afraid but he thought, “If (b) ______ don’t think of something soon, (c) ______ will eat me.” (d) ______ was delighted to see (e) ______ stuck in (f) ______ mud. When (g) ______ got near (h) ______ he said, “Today (i) ______ am very lucky.” (j) “_____ can eat much meat.” When (k) ______ heard this, he shook like a leaf in (l) ______ wind. He gently asked, “Uncle (m)______, may (n) ______ help you in some way?” (o) ______ said, (p) “_____ want to eat you.” White Horse said, “Now my feet are stuck in (q) ______ mud.” (r) ______ am very dirty.” “You must get me out of (s) ______ mud and wash my body.” “Then (t) ______ will taste much better.” (u) ______ thought, “What he said is true.” (v) ______ worked hard to get (w) ______ horse out of (x) ______ mud. After doing this (y) ______ asked, “Now is it okay if (z) ______ eat you?” (aa) ______ sadly answered, “Of course.” (bb) ______ want to know (cc) ______ meaning of (dd) ______ scriptures written on my hooves.” (ee) “_____ can’t see them.”
4. Match phrases from Part I and Part II to make correct sentences.

PART I

a. After some time the other ___
b. He was arrogant because he was ___
c. He did not see ___
d. He jerked his legs but this ___
e. He knew he ___
f. He left the herd and ran ___
g. He was ___
h. Long ago a herd of ___
i. One hot day the horses were ___
j. Sometimes he ___
k. Suddenly his feet ___
l. They ran ___
m. White Horse saw many weeds ___
n. White Horse was very ___

PART II

1. toward the pool as fast as he could.
2. the mud under the weeds.
3. sank into the mud.
4. made him get stuck more deeply in the mud.
5. horses lived on a wonderful grassland.
6. horses did not believe anything he said.
7. growing around a pool of clean water.
8. everywhere they liked.
9. lied to the other horses.
10. must get out.
11. was the strongest and fastest of all the horses.
12. walking across the grassland.
13. very thirsty.
14. clever and very beautiful.
5. Write answers to these questions.

a. Why did the other horses not believe White Horse?
b. Why did White Horse want to get out of the mud?
c. Do you think Wolf was clever or stupid? Why?
d. Were scriptures really written on White Horse’s hooves? Why do you think so?
e. How did White Horse get out of the mud?
f. How did Wolf die?

6. This story teaches two important lessons. What are they?

7. Match each Tibetan meaning with its correct English equivalent.
1. Vocabulary

during his travels
trap
released
honor
bit
fangs
discarded
delightedly exclaimed

pilgrim
taking pity on it
flesh and blood
shaking with fear
saddle
trembling
never take pity on
separate ways
Long ago during his travels, a pilgrim found a wolf caught in a trap. Taking pity on it, he released it from the trap. Then Wolf said, “I am very hungry and thirsty. I have been in this trap for three long days. You must give me your flesh and blood to eat.” Then Wolf jumped towards Pilgrim.

Pilgrim was very frightened and said, “My people have honor. I saved you but now you want to eat me. You are a creature with a very different idea about honor.”

“I have never heard of honor. Everyone wants to eat when they are hungry,” said hungry Wolf. He came closer to Pilgrim, who was shaking with fear.

“Before you eat me, let’s ask some other animals if people have honor. If they say people do have honor, you can’t eat me. If they say people don’t have honor, then you can eat me,” said Pilgrim in a quivery voice. Wolf agreed.

Then they went together across the grassland in search of animals. They first met an old horse. Pilgrim asked the old horse, “Do people have honor?”

“People have no honor. When I was young, people put a bit in my mouth and a saddle on my back. They rode me everywhere. But now they don’t care about me. They have thrown me away. I’m old and injured and they don’t care about me,” said the old horse.

When Wolf heard this he opened his mouth very wide and showed his fangs to Pilgrim. “We still must ask two other animals. If they say people have no honor, you can eat me,” said Pilgrim in a trembling voice. Wolf agreed and they continued on.

They met an old female yak and Pilgrim asked her the same question. She answered, “People have no honor. When I was young they milked me and drank the milk. They didn’t give my child any to drink. But now that I’m old they don’t care about me. They have discarded me.”

Wolf delightedly exclaimed, “See! Everyone says people have no honor. So now I will eat you,” and moved close to Pilgrim.

Pilgrim said, “Let’s ask one more animal this question.” They continued on and met a rabbit and asked it the same question.

Rabbit thought for a long time and then said, “I’m not sure. I’ll have to see the place where the trap is.”

When the three reached the trap Rabbit said to Wolf, “Now please show me how you were caught in the trap.”

Wolf put his foot back into the trap. Rabbit went near the trap and said quietly and happily to Pilgrim, “From now on never take pity on a cruel wolf.”

Pilgrim and Rabbit then went their separate ways leaving Wolf in the trap where he soon died.
ཐུན་རྩ་བཙན་དཔལ་ངོ་

"ཐུན་རྩ་བཙན་དཔལ་ངོ་

༠༡༤༩

ངོ་བཙན་གཞན་དཔལ་ངོ་

"ཐུན་རྩ་བཙན་དཔལ་ངོ་

༠༡༤༩

ངོ་བཙན་གཞན་དཔལ་ངོ་
3. Put these words in the blanks below: wolf, pilgrim, rabbit, horse, yak, people.

Long ago, during his travels, a ______ found a ______ caught in a trap. Taking pity on it, he released it from the trap. Then ______ said, “I am very hungry and thirsty. I have been in this trap for three long days. You must give me your flesh and blood to eat.” Then______ jumped towards ______.

______ was very frightened and said, “My ______ have honor. I saved you but now you want to eat me. You are a creature with a very different idea about honor.”

“I have never heard of honor. Everyone wants to eat when they are hungry,” said hungry ______. He came closer to ______, who was shaking with fear.

“Before you eat me, let’s ask some other animals if ______ have honor. If they say ______ do have honor, you can’t eat me. If they say ______ don’t have honor, then you can eat me,” said ______ in a quivery voice. ______ agreed.

Then they went together across the grassland in search of animals. They first met an old ______. ______ asked the old ______, “Do ______ have honor?”

“______ have no honor. When I was young, ______ put a bit in my mouth and a saddle on my back. They rode me everywhere. But now they don’t care about me. They have thrown me away. I’m old and injured and they don’t care about me,” said the old ______.

When ______ heard this he opened his mouth very wide and showed his fangs to ______. “We still must ask two other animals. If they say ______ have no honor, you can eat me,” said ______ in a trembling voice. ______ agreed and they continued on.

They met an old female ______ and ______ asked her the same question. She answered, “______ have no honor. When I was young they milked me and drank the milk. They didn’t give my child any to drink. But now that I’m old they don’t care about me. They have discarded me.”

______ delightedly exclaimed, “See! Everyone says ______ have no honor. So now I will eat you,” and moved close to ______.

______ said, “Let’s ask one more animal this question.” They continued on and met a ______ and asked it the same question.

______ thought for a long time and then said, “I’m not sure. I’ll have to see the place where the trap is.”

When the three reached the trap ______ said to ______, “Now please show me how you were caught in the trap.”

______ put his foot back into the trap. ______ went near the trap and said quietly and happily to ______. “From now on never take pity on a cruel ______.”

______ and ______ then went their separate ways leaving ______ in the trap where he soon died.

4. Mark these sentences T (true) or F (false).

a. Rabbit was caught in the trap.
b. Wolf was cleverer than Rabbit.
c. Wolf ate Pilgrim.
d. The old yak liked people very much.
e. Rabbit helped Pilgrim.
f. The old horse did not like people.
h. Pilgrim and Wolf met three animals.
A Strange Dream

1. Vocabulary

walked along नरुनार्गधर्नाद्वयते
stream कुज
worm धाक
emitting फोलासु
imitated लाँक्षणतस
dragon घुडु
homesick लुबानु लुबासु
to test नारातङ्क्ष

in excitement लिङ्गायाचित्र
tumbled into रसुवोधुया
suffocating नाराजस्तम्भिक
licking चिराग
gradually ईज्यो ईज्यो
doing fieldwork ईज्यो ईज्यो
invisible ईज्यो ईज्यो
strong wind तुम्बु तुम्बु
One winter day a poor orphan boy walked along a stream. He was very surprised to come to a place covered with beautiful yellow flowers and green grass. He sat down in excitement to enjoy the beauty. Suddenly he tumbled into a very deep hole. He did not know what was happening. He was very frightened.

When he finally stopped falling, he could not see where he was because it was so dark and he was suffocating. Then he saw a light shining in the darkness. He excitedly ran towards it. A small worm was licking the thing that was emitting light. He was very surprised. He realized that he would die if he did not do something soon. Therefore, he imitated the worm and licked the light.

“How strange!” thought the boy, for he suddenly felt much better. Many days passed but the boy never felt hungry or that he was suffocating. He often licked the light and slept.

He did not know how many days passed. He felt the earth gradually becoming warmer.

One day he saw the small worm becoming bigger and bigger. The small worm soon became a dragon. Spring was coming and the dragon started to fly out of the hole outside. The boy held onto the dragon’s body. He wanted to leave the dark hole.

When they got outside, he saw many farmers doing fieldwork. The earth had become green. He realized he had lived in the hole for one season. He felt homesick, let go of the dragon, and fell to the earth. He was not hurt, but now he was lost. Nothing was familiar to him.

After some time he saw a man in a cart coming towards him. When the man came near, the boy asked for help but the man said nothing. The boy thought the man could not see him because he was invisible. To test this, he jumped at the horse’s head. The horse neighed loudly. “What’s wrong with you?” the cart driver said.

“He really can’t see me,” the boy thought happily. “Now I can go anywhere.” The boy followed the cart for a long time. Finally, the cart driver stopped at the home of one of his relative’s. After the cart driver finished his supper, he continued his journey but the invisible boy did not follow.

The cart driver’s relatives were very rich. “They can’t see me, so I can live and eat here and not work,” he thought. For many months, he ate and drank at this house.

One day two people in the home were quarreling. One person said, “You ate all the meat, bread, and butter that were here.”

The second person replied, “No! It was you.”

They finally invited a monk to their home to find out where the meat, bread, and butter had gone. The monk could see the boy in the room. He took out his prayer beads and said, “Who are you? Why did you come here and make them quarrel? Leave quickly!”

A strong wind suddenly swept the boy away. When he opened his eyes, he was back in his own poor home.
3. Put the sentences in the correct order.

a. __ "How strange!" thought the boy, for he suddenly felt much better.
b. ___A small worm was licking the thing that was emitting light.
c. ___After some time he saw a man in a cart coming towards him.
d. ___Finally, the cart driver stopped at the home of one of his relative’s.
e. ___He did not know how many days passed.
f. ___He felt homesick, let go of the dragon, and fell to the earth.
g. ___He realized he had lived in the hole for one season.
h. ___He realized that he would die if he did not do something soon.
i. ___He was very surprised to see beautiful yellow flowers and green grass.
j. ___One day two people in the home were quarreling.
k. ___One winter day a poor orphan boy walked along a stream.
l. ___The boy thought the man could not see him because he was invisible.
m. ___The monk could see the boy in the room.
n. ___The small worm soon became a dragon.
o. ___Therefore, he imitated the worm and licked the light.
p. ___They finally invited a monk to their home to find out where the food had gone.
q. ___When he opened his eyes, he was back in his own poor home.

4. Mark these sentences T (true) or F (false).

a. The rich orphan walked by the stream. **T** **F**
b. He tumbled into a very deep hole. **T** **F**
c. A small worm was licking a light. **T** **F**
d. The worm became a donkey. **T** **F**
e. He lived in the hole for two seasons. **T** **F**
f. The boy became invisible. **T** **F**
g. The cart driver’s relatives were poor. **T** **F**
h. The monk could see the boy. **T** **F**

5. Put these words in the blanks below: a, and, to, up, in, outside, onto, for, of, with, at, out.

a. One day he saw ______ small worm becoming bigger ______ bigger.
b. ______ small worm soon became ______ dragon.
c. Spring was coming ____ ____ dragon started ____ make his way ___ __ ___ hole.
d. ____ boy held ______ ___ dragon’s body.
e. When they got ______, he saw many farmers.
f. ______ earth was green.
g. He had lived ______ ______ hole ______ one season.
h. He let go__________ dragon, ______ fell ______ ______ earth.
i. He saw ______ man______ ______ cart coming towards him.
j. When ______ man came near, ______ boy asked ______ help but ______ man said nothing.
   ______ boy thought ______ man could not see him because he was invisible.
k. ______ test this, he jumped ______ the horse’s head. ______ horse neighed loudly.
l. “What’s wrong ______ you?” ______ cart driver said.
A Beautiful Shining Star

1. Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Tibetan</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>wither</td>
<td>མདོན།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in order to</td>
<td>གི་ལེགས།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>support</td>
<td>སྤྲུལ། སྤྲུལ།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wicker basket</td>
<td>རྟོ་བོས་ཀྱི།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>roaring</td>
<td>རྣམ་གྱུར།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>overhead</td>
<td>སྤྲཀ་སྤྲ། སྤྲཀ་སྤྲ།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>magician</td>
<td>རྒྱལ་ཐང།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>snowy</td>
<td>མཚོན་ཡུལ་བཞི།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hanging</td>
<td>སྤེན་པ། སྤེན་པ།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clashed</td>
<td>རྒྱུའི།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the origin of</td>
<td>འབུ་ལུང་།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>irrigated</td>
<td>སྤེན་པ། སྤེན་པ།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>overjoyed</td>
<td>འབུ་ལུང་། འབུ་ལུང་།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brilliance</td>
<td>སྤེན་པ། སྤེན་པ།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>envious</td>
<td>རྒྱུ་ལྔ།</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Caireng lived with his parents until one terrible year when all of his family’s crops withered and died. When no food remained in his home, Caireng left to try to find a job in order to support his parents.

After he had walked for a while he met an old man carrying a heavy wicker basket on his back. Caireng ran up and said, “You don’t have enough strength to carry this heavy wicker basket. Let me help you.”

The old man gave him the basket and said, “How kind you are.” As they were walking along, the sky suddenly grew dark. A roaring dragon suddenly flew overhead. Caireng was a brave boy but he was terribly afraid of dragons. He cried out in fear, dropped to the ground, and covered his head with his hands.

“Boy, the dragon is an ordinary animal. Why are you so afraid of it?” asked the old man.

“You don’t fear dragons until you really see them,” replied Caireng.

“Well, we can go together to see the dragons. Then you can see that I don’t fear them,” said the old man.

The truth was that the old man was actually a magician.

The old man said some magic words, and suddenly he and Caireng were flying above the clouds just like birds. Caireng saw beautiful snowy mountains in front and blue oceans behind him. When he looked up, there were many stars hanging in the sky. He stretched out his hand, picked a beautiful star, looked at it, and then put it in his pocket.

He saw two dragons leading a horse loaded with a huge bucket of water. When the dragons’ tails clashed together, they made a loud sound. Caireng realized that this was the origin of thunder. Three god boys took water out of the bucket and irrigated the clouds.

When the god boys saw Caireng, they called, “Oh, boy! Come help us put water on the ground.”

Caireng was very happy to help. He took a big ladle and poured water on the fields. He poured extra water on his father’s fields. The three god boys thanked him for his help. They also helped him return to his home. They tied Caireng to the dragon’s tail with a rope and then lowered him slowly to the ground.

Caireng was happy to be home again. He was also happy because it was raining. His parents were overjoyed to see him home safe and sound.

Caireng went into the living room, took the beautiful star out of his pocket, and put it on a table. It lit up the room with its brilliance. After many days, everybody in the village knew that Caireng had picked a beautiful shining star from the sky. At last, the news reached the King. He was so envious of Caireng’s star that he gave him a lot of money for it. Caireng then became the richest man in that place. He built a lovely house for his parents and himself. He also gave a lot of money to poor people.
བོད་ཡིག་བཅོས་ཏེ་དེ་དུ་བཤད་དང་ལོག་འི་ཡིག་ཡིན་པར་ཤེས་པ།

183
3. Put the sentences in the correct order.

a. ___ After he had walked for a while he met an old man carrying a heavy wicker basket.
b. ___ The King was envious of Caireng’s star.
c. ___ Caireng lived with his parents until one terrible year.
d. ___ Caireng then became the richest man in that place.
e. ___ Caireng was a brave boy but he was terribly afraid of dragons.
f. ___ Caireng took the beautiful star out of his pocket and put it on a table.
g. ___ He poured extra water on his father’s fields.
h. ___ He picked a beautiful star, looked at it, and then put it in his pocket.
i. ___ His parents were overjoyed to see him home safe and sound.
j. ___ The old man said some magic words.
k. ___ The truth was that the old man was actually a magician.
l. ___ They lowered him slowly to the ground.
m. ___ Three god boys took water out of the bucket and irrigated the clouds.
n. ___ When the god boys saw Caireng, they called, “Oh, boy!”

4. Write answers to these questions.

a. Why did Caireng leave his home?
b. What was Caireng afraid of?
c. What was the old man actually?
d. What did Caireng pick from the sky?
e. What was the origin of thunder?
f. What did Caireng help the god boys do?
g. What did he take out of his pocket and show his parents?
h. What did the King give Caireng for his star?

5. Crossword

Across
2. It lit up the room with its _____.
6. A ______ing dragon flew overhead.
7. His parents were ______ to see him come home safely.
8. He looked up and saw many ______ing stars.

Down
1. The dragons’ tails ______ together and made a loud sound.
3. Three god boys ______ the clouds.
4. He was so ______ of Caireng’s star that he gave him a lot of money for it.
5. Caireng understood that this was the ______ of thunder.
1. Vocabulary

depressedly  ནེད་
lower body  སྲོང་།
seemed (looked like, appeared)  སོར།
exhausted  སྲོམ།

upper body  བྱུང་།
vanish  རྡོ་ མོང་།
disappeared  རྡོ་ མོང་།
inscribed  རྡོ་ མོང་།
One day three boys were playing together. One was a king’s son, one was a rich family’s son, and one was a poor family’s son. When they were about to start another game the King’s son said, “Who can’t shoot that crow sitting in that tree over there must pay a thousand coins.”

The rich family’s son said, “I have money. I can shoot the crow. I’ll go to my home now and get my bow and arrows.”

The King’s son said the same and went home to get his bow and arrows.

The poor boy sat dejectedly by the tree. He did not have a thousand coins. He did not even have a bow and arrows.

The crow suddenly tumbled out of the tree, turned into a Lama, and took the poor son to his home. The Lama said, “There is a place where a ghost whose upper body is gold and whose lower body is silver lives. There are also other ghosts at this place. When we get there, some ghosts will ask you to take them but you shouldn’t. The ghost that tells you not to take him is the one you should take. However, you must not speak to it after you begin carrying it. If you do, it will vanish.”

Then the Lama took the poor boy to the ghosts’ place. The poor boy felt very afraid because there were many ghosts and they all seemed to want him to take them. Then the poor boy saw a ghost in a tree. It said, “Please don’t take me.”

The poor boy climbed the tree and said, “Come down. If you don’t, I will cut down this tree.”

The ghost said, “Please don’t cut down this tree. I’ll come down.” Then the ghost climbed down and got into the poor boy’s bag.

As he was walking back to the Lama’s home the ghost said, “Look at the sky.” The poor boy said, “What!” and the ghost disappeared.

The poor boy felt sad and said, “Next time I won’t say a word to that ghost.” Then he went back to the ghosts’ place, got the ghost out of the tree, put him in his bag, and started to the Lama’s home again.

This time he reached the Lama’s home with the ghost. Just as he was putting the bag on the ground he said, “I’m exhausted.” The ghost began to disappear. The Lama quickly snatched out one of the ghost’s hair and told the poor boy to take the ghost’s hair to the roof of his home.

The poor boy did so and, a moment later the Lama joined him. The Lama said they would read a scripture inscribed on the ghost’s hair.

The Lama looked at the scripture first and read, “Let the world be fair and have no highs and lows, no poor and rich, no beautiful and ugly.”

Then the poor boy looked at the scripture and read, “Let the world be unfair, have highs and lows, have poor and rich, have ugly and beautiful.”

After that day the world had highs and lows, poor and rich, beautiful and ugly, and became very unfair.
བོད་ཀྱི་དོན་དྲུག་དང་སྦྱིར་བོད་ཀྱི་དོན་དྲུག་དང་ཚེ་དོན་དྲུག་བོད་ཀྱི་དོན་དྲུག་བོད་ཀྱི་དོན་དྲུག་
བོད་ཀྱི་དོན་དྲུག་དང་སྦྱིར་བོད་ཀྱི་དོན་དྲུག་དང་ཚེ་དོན་དྲུག་བོད་ཀྱི་དོན་དྲུག་བོད་ཀྱི་དོན་དྲུག་
བོད་ཀྱི་དོན་དྲུག་དང་སྦྱིར་བོད་ཀྱི་དོན་དྲུག་

•187•
3. Match phrases from Part I and Part II to make correct sentences.

PART I

a. After that day the world had highs and lows, ____
b. One day three boys ____
c. The crow suddenly tumbled from out of the tree, ____
d. The King’s son said the same and ____
e. The Lama quickly snatched out one of the ghost’s hair and ____
f. The poor boy climbed the tree and said, “Come down. ____
g. The poor boy sadly said, “Next time I won’t ____
h. The poor boy sat ____
i. Then he went back to the ghosts’ place, got the ghost out of the tree, ____
j. Then the ghost climbed down and ____
k. Then the poor boy ____
l. This time he reached ____

PART II

1. dejectedly by the tree.
2. got into the poor boy’s bag.
3. If you don’t, I will cut down this tree.”
4. poor and rich, beautiful and ugly, and became very unfair.
5. put him in his bag, and started to the Lama’s home again.
6. saw a ghost in a tree.
7. say a word to that ghost.”
8. the Lama’s home with the ghost.
9. told the poor boy to take the ghost’s hair to the roof of his home.
10. turned into a Lama, and took the poor son to his home.
11. went home to get his bow and arrows.
12. were playing together.

4. Put these words in the blanks below: a, the, to, in, over, by, out, of, into, at, and.

a. One was _____ king’s son, one was _____ rich family’s son, _____ one was _____ poor family’s son.
b. When they were about _____ start another game _____ King’s son said, “Who can’t shoot that crow sitting _____ that tree _____ there must pay _____ thousand coins.”
c. _____ rich family’s son said, “I can shoot _____ crow.”
d. “I’ll go _____ my home now _____ get my bow _____ arrows.”
e. _____ King’s son said _____ same _____ went home _____ get his bow _____ arrows.
f. _____ poor boy sat dejectedly _____ _____ tree.
g. He did not have _____ thousand coins.
h. He did not even have _____ bow and arrows.
i. _____ crow suddenly tumbled _____ _____ _____ tree, turned _____ _____ Lama, and took _____ poor son _____ his home.
j. _____ lama said, “There is _____ place where _____ ghost whose upper body is gold _____ whose
lower body is silver lives.
k. “There are other ghosts _____ this place.”
l. “Some ghosts will ask you ______ take them but you shouldn’t.
m. “_____ ghost that tells you not _____ take him is _____ one you should take.”
n. “You must not speak _____ it after you begin carrying it.”
o. _____ Lama took _____ poor boy _____ _____ ghosts’ place.
p. _____ poor boy felt afraid because there were many ghosts _____ they all seemed _____ want him
_____ take them.
q. Then _____ poor boy saw _____ ghost _____ _____ tree.
r. _____ poor boy climbed _____ tree _____ said, “Come down.”

5. Write answers to these questions.

6. Mark these sentences T (true) or F (false).
1. Vocabulary

valleys ཤུ་བ།
collect firewood སྒང་ལབ།
investigate སྐུ་དོན།
hung out of འབྲུག་པར་བོ།
Grandpa (grandfather) བོད་པ།
trick ཐོག་པ།
gun band ཤོང་སྡེ།
meanwhile བདེན་སྙམ།
lunged ཁླུང་བ།
Hey! བོད།
gently རྟོག་ཆེན།
defeat མོང་བཞིན་པ།
went along a path to a hilltop ཕྱུང་པོ་འོས་་བཟོ་ན་བོད་ལུགས།

alone in the world འཛུལ་བུར་བཟང་བཞིན་ཏུ།
earn money to live གཅིག་དམིགས་ཤུགས།
enormous (very big, huge) ཨོ་ནས་བཤད།
jumped back འབྲུག་འབུ་བོ།
meat on your bones རྟོག་ཅུ་བཞིན།
swear an oath སྐྱེན་པ།
yell ཟླུང་མི་བོ།
agreed meeting place འབྲུག་པར་བོ།
shouted འབྲུག་ལུགས།
ax དྲུག།
saved འབྲུག་ལུགས།
“What’s the matter with you?” བུར་བཞིན་ལ་གུགས་ཤེས་ལ།
Zhum and her son Lobsang lived in a house at the bottom of three big deep valleys. One day Mother Zhuma suddenly became ill and died, leaving Lobsang alone in the world. Each day he went into the forest to collect firewood. He sold the wood to earn money to live. A year later while he was collecting firewood he heard a strange sound. When he went to investigate, he saw an enormous wolf. It had long sharp fangs. A bright red tongue hung out of its mouth.

When Wolf saw Lobsang he ran to him and said, “Ha, ha! Today I have a sweet thing to eat and warm blood to drink. I haven’t smelled meat for seven days. I will eat you.”

Lobsang was frightened and jumped back. He said, “Please don’t eat me today. I haven’t eaten for three days. If you eat me now you wouldn’t feel full. Please eat me tomorrow Grandpa Wolf.”

Wolf said, “What you said is true. You will taste better with more meat on your bones. But I don’t believe that you will come back tomorrow. You might be trying to trick me. You must swear an oath that you will come back tomorrow.”

“If I am not here tomorrow, come to my home and eat me,” said Lobsang. Wolf then let Lobsang leave.

Lobsang was very worried. On the way back to his home he met a rabbit. Rabbit asked, “Brother, why are you so sad? You aren’t carrying any wood. What’s the matter with you?” Lobsang told Rabbit his problem.

“Don’t be afraid for I can help you. I have a plan,” said Rabbit. Lobsang found this hard to believe.

Let’s go to your home,” said Rabbit. They went together to Lobsang’s home.

When they reached Lobsang’s home, Rabbit said, “Please make a wooden gun.” Lobsang quickly made a wooden gun and used a piece of rope for a gun band.

The next day they got up early, ate quickly, and went into the forest. On the way to the forest Rabbit said, “When I yell, you must say the King’s hunter is coming.”

Rabbit took the wooden gun and went along a path to a hilltop. Meanwhile, Lobsang went to meet Wolf. When he reached their agreed meeting place Wolf was waiting. Wolf said, “Now, I am going to eat you,” and lunged at Lobsang. But suddenly Wolf heard, “Be careful! The King’s hunter is coming. He’s got a gun.”

“Is the King’s hunter really coming?” asked Wolf.

Rabbit shouted to Lobsang, “Hey! What’s that beside you?”

“Please tell him I am a piece of wood,” said Wolf.

Lobsang shouted, “It’s a piece of wood.”

“Please hit it with your ax,” said Rabbit.

“Please hit me gently,” said Wolf. Lobsang hit Wolf very gently.

“Why does it make no sound?” said Rabbit.

“Please hit me hard,” said Wolf. This time Lobsang hit Wolf so hard on the head that he died. Rabbit’s plan had worked and Lobsang was saved!

Lobsang and Rabbit then became sworn brothers and had a wonderful and pleasant life together. Since that time most people do not eat rabbit meat.
3. Put these words in the blanks below ལོ་བོ་ན་ཨི་གཞི་བཞི་ལོ་ནོར་ལོ་ཇུང་ལོ་: and, an, the, at, of, in, a.

a. Zhuma ____ lived ____ ____ house ____ ____ bottom ____ three valleys.
b. Mother Zhuma became ill ____ died, leaving Lobsang alone ____ ____ world.
c. He went into ____ forest to collect firewood.
d. He sold ____ wood to earn money.
e. ____ year later he heard ____ strange sound.
f. When he went to investigate he saw ____ enormous wolf.
g. ____ bright red tongue hung out ____ its mouth.
h. Wolf saw Lobsang, ran to him, ____ said, “Today I have ____ sweet thing to eat ____ warm blood to drink.”
i. Lobsang was frightened ____ jumped back.
j. “You must swear ____ oath that you will come back tomorrow.”
k. “If I am not here tomorrow, come to my home ____ eat me,” said Lobsang.

4. Put these sentences in the correct order. བོད་ལ་བོར་ཟེ་དཔེ་ལེགས་མཛད་པ་ལས།

a. ___ “Hey! What’s that beside you?”
b. ___ “Is the King’s hunter really coming” asked Wolf.
c. ___ “Please hit it with your ax,” said Rabbit.
d. ___ “Please hit me gently,” said Wolf.
e. ___ “Please hit me hard,” said Wolf.
f. ___ “Please tell him I am a piece of wood,” said Wolf.
g. ___ “Why does it make no sound?” said Rabbit.
h. ___ Lobsang and Rabbit became sworn brothers and had a wonderful life.
i. ___ Lobsang hit the wolf very gently.
j. ___ Lobsang shouted, “It’s a piece of wood.”
k. ___ Rabbit shouted to Lobsang,
l. ___ Rabbit’s plan had worked and Lobsang was saved!
m. ___ Since that time most people do not eat rabbit meat.
n. ___ This time Lobsang hit Wolf hard and he died.
5. Mark these sentences T (true) or F (false).

a. The mother and Wolf both died. T F
b. Rabbit did not help Lobsang. T F
c. Lobsang swore an oath. T F
d. Wolf agreed to not eat Lobsang when they first met. T F
e. Wolf is kind and Rabbit is unkind in this story. T F
f. Rabbit’s plan helped Wolf. T F
g. Wolf died when Rabbit shot him with the gun. T F

6. Write answers to these questions.

a. What was Rabbit’s plan?
b. How did Wolf die?
c. Why did Lobsang’s mother die?
d. Why was Lobsang very worried?
e. Where did Lobsang meet Wolf?

7. What lesson does this story teach?

a. Mothers do die.
b. Lobsang loved his mother very much.
c. Lobsang was a man.
d. Clever weak animals may be able to defeat bigger animals.
1. Vocabulary

livelhood  བཤོས།
schooling  བཤོས་སྟེངས།
received high marks  བཤོས་ལགས་ལགས་ལགས།
controlled  བཤོས་ངོ་བོ་བཤོས་ངོ་བོ།
dried bread  བཤོས་བོད།
polluted  བཤོས་མོ་མོ།
dutiful  བཞིག་བཞིག།
boarding school  བཞིག་ཞིག་ཞིག།
persevered  བཞིག་བཞིག་བཞིག་བཞིག་
patient  བཞིག་བཞིག་
gather enough strength  བཞིག་བཞིག་བཞིག་བཞིག་
readied  བཞིག་བཞིག་
A father, a mother, and a son lived in a village. They sold wood for their livelihood. One day the father said to the mother, “We only have a son. I love him very much. He is like my heart. If I didn’t have a heart, I couldn’t live.”

The mother replied, “I feel the same. He is like my eyes. If I didn’t have my eyes, I couldn’t see.” From then on they called their son “Heart-Eyes.”

When the boy got older the father said, “I think our son is dutiful. We must send him to school. He is eight and old enough to go to school. If he eventually got a job and a salary we could live in comfort and ease.”

“But we have no money to pay for his schooling,” said the mother.

“We can get the money if we work for other people,”answered the father.

The parents then did work for other people and were able to send their son to a boarding school far from their home. They were only able to see him twice a year. He studied very hard and received high marks. Day after day, year after year, he persevered and studied hard. When he finished his schooling, he got a job in town and brought his parents to live with him.

By this time his parents were very weak because they were old and had worked too hard during their lives.

Later he married pretty young Zhaxi Zhuma. They eventually had a son and named him Zhaxi.

Some years later after Heart-Eyes’ mother died, Zhaxi Zhuma treated the grandfather badly. She controlled the family. Heart-Eyes never said anything about the way she treated his father.

The old man was sad but he was very patient.

One day Zhaxi Zhuma put the old man in the dark, cold basement of the house and only gave him dried bread to eat. The old man had no teeth so he could not eat the bread. Zhaxi knew his grandfather could not eat the bread and secretly gave him other food. When his mother discovered this, she beat Zhaxi.

The old man was so hungry and cold that he became very ill. He thought that if he could gather enough strength he would leave the house and beg for food outside on the street, but he could not move. He had no medicine and Zhaxi Zhuma would not give him any.

One day Zhaxi Zhuma said to Heart-Eyes, “Your father will die soon. He can’t stay here anymore. Our home will become dirty and polluted if he dies here. Tomorrow take him and throw him in a cave at the top of a mountain. I have readied a basket for you to carry him in.”

Although Heart-Eyes felt very sad, he said nothing. The next morning he put his father in the basket and then put the basket on his back. He took food and water with him. He put his father in the cave and put the food beside him. He felt very sorry for his father.

When he reached home with the empty basket, he wanted to throw it in the garbage. His son stopped him and said, “Don’t throw it away. I will keep it until you get old and then I will throw you into a cave because you have been so loving and kind to me.”

What the boy said amazed Heart-Eyes. He thought about how much his parents had loved him. He raced back to the cave to get his father but it was too late. His father was dead from hunger, cold, and illness.
3. Put the sentences in the correct order.

a. ___ A father, a mother, and a son lived in a village.
b. ___ His parents were old and had worked too hard during their lives.
c. ___ Day after day he persevered and studied hard.
d. ___ He raced back to the cave to get his father but it was too late.
e. ___ He wanted to beg for food outside on the street.
f. ___ He took food and water with him.
g. ___ His son said, “I will throw you into a cave because you have been loving to me.”
h. ___ Zhaxi Zhuma put the old man in a cold basement.
i. ___ After Heart-Eyes’ mother died, Zhaxi Zhuma treated the grandfather badly.
j. ___ He put his father in the basket.
k. ___ The old man was sad but he was very patient.
l. ___ The old man was hungry and cold.
m. ___ The parents then did work for other people.
n. ___ The father said, “I think our son is dutiful. We must send him to school.”

4. Write answers to these questions.

a. Why did the mother and father call their son “Heart-Eyes”?
b. When did they send Heart-Eyes to school?
c. How often did they see Heart-Eyes?
d. Did Heart-Eyes study hard?
e. Who did Heart-Eyes marry?
f. How did his wife treat his father?
g. Where did Zhaxi Zhuma put the grandfather one day?
h. What did the grandson secretly give to his grandfather?
i. When Zhaxi Zhuma discovered what her son had done, what did she do to him?
j. What did Zhaxi Zhuma tell Heart-Eyes to do with his father?
k. Why did his son stop him from throwing away the basket?
l. When he raced back to the cave, was his father still alive?
Across
1. Zhaxi Zhuma said, “I have_____ a basket for you to carry him in.”
3. She _____ the family.
7. He thought that if he could_____ enough strength he would leave the house.

Down
2. The father said, “I think our son is _____.”
4. They sold wood for their ______.
5. The parents were able to send their son to a _____ school far from their home.
6. Day after day, year after year, he _____ and studied hard.
A Lazy Man Becomes Hardworking

I. Vocabulary

led a lazy life ལེགས་པའི་རྒྱལ་ལུགས།
decided རྩོམ་པར་
loaf of bread གྲུབ་ཐང་
good sign གཟུགས་སྒྲ།
reins རྣམ་
stuck རྟེགས།
laughingly བལྟ་བུ།
night had fallen དྲག་མཚན།
precious turquoise bead ཁྲུང་ཐུབ་དྭབ་
pretended བྱིན་བྱེད་
murmuring ཁྱེད་བུ་བོ།
dismounted ལམ་མཚན།
slept from morning until night དྲག་མཚན་དུས་བུ།
change his habits ཁམི་བཞིན་
heap of ash གསར་བུ།
fox མི།
chased འོང་བོ་
weeping འོང་།
lamenting a death ཐོག་མོང་།
collecting fuel ཕུབ་དགོང་།
frantic བོད་སྲེལ།
entered the palace གཙང་ལྕགས།
delighted སངས་དགོང་།
A couple lived in a tent near a beautiful city. The man led a lazy life and often slept from morning until night. The woman decided to try to change his habits. She hoped he would become hardworking and stop being lazy.

One morning she went outside and put a big round loaf of bread beside a heap of ash. Then she went back inside the tent and said to her husband, “Today is a wonderful day. Many birds have come to our ash heap. They are flying around something.”

The man decided that he must get up and see what had happened. When he went out to the ash heap he found a large piece of bread. He thought this was a good sign and said, “I am going hunting tomorrow.”

The next day his wife gave him some food she had prepared and then he rode off into a forest on his horse with a gun and a dog. He soon noticed a fox running into a big hole. He stopped his horse, dismounted, tied his gun on the horse’s back, and tied the reins to a rope around the dog’s neck.

The hole the fox had run into had two openings. He covered one opening with his hat and went to the other opening and built a fire inside. The fire chased the fox out of the other hole. When the fox came running out of the hole, the man’s hat stuck on its head.

The fox frightened the dog and horse. They ran away, leaving the man with nothing. The man was very sad as he began walking in search of his horse and dog.

Finally, he came to a camp. He asked the people at the camp if they had seen his horse and dog and the fox. He was so sad when he talked about what he had lost that he began weeping. The people at the camp said, “Today is a wonderful day and we are all very well. We don’t like you to weep,” and then they beat him. The man said nothing and, as he walked away, he began laughing.

Some time later he met a crowd of people. He laughingly asked them the same question he had asked the people at the camp. One man from the crowd said, “We are lamenting a death. Why are you so happy?” and then the people beat him.

The man continued walking and came to the King’s palace. Near the palace was an empty room. Night had fallen so he slept there until the next morning. When he woke up, he looked outside and saw a girl collecting fuel. She was the King’s daughter. As he watched her, he noticed the string around her neck break. A precious turquoise bead rolled into a small hole. A short time later the girl noticed that her turquoise was missing. She became so frantic and worried that she became ill.

The man pretended to be a monk and entered the palace. The King was very glad to see a monk because he thought he might be able to help his ill daughter.

“Welcome! If you can find my daughter’s valuable turquoise, I’ll give you anything you want,” said the King. The “monk” led the King outside, and pointed to different spots on the grassland while murmuring “No, no, no...” Finally he said, “Yes!” and pointed to where he knew the turquoise was.

The King dug into a small hole the “monk” pointed to and found the turquoise. A moment later when his daughter heard this, she was well again.

The King was delighted, thanked the “monk,” and gave him many gifts. Then the man left riding a horse the King had given him.

Later when he returned home, he became hardworking.
ཐོབ་བོད་ཤིང་ཐུབ་བོད་ལས་བོད་ཅན། ཟུག་སྡེར་བོད་ཤིང་ཐུབ་བོད་ལས་བོད་ཅན། ཨོ་བྲེལ་ཤིང་ཐུབ་བོད་ལས་བོད་ཅན།ཐོབ་བོད་ཤིང་ཐུབ་བོད་ལས་བོད་ཅན།}

ཐུབ་བོད་ཤིང་ཁུང་ཁུང་ཆུས་དྲ་སློབ་ཤིང་ཐུབ་བོད་ལས་བོད་ཅན། ཟུག་སྡེར་བོད་ཤིང་ཐུབ་བོད་ལས་བོད་ཅན། ཨོ་བྲེལ་ཤིང་ཐུབ་བོད་ལས་བོད་ཅན།ཐུབ་བོད་ཤིང་ཐུབ་བོད་ལས་བོད་ཅན།
3. Put these paragraphs in the correct order.

(1) “Welcome! If you can find my daughter’s valuable turquoise I’ll give you anything you want,” said the King. The “monk” led the King outside, and pointed to different spots on the grassland while murmuring “No, no, no...”

(2) A couple lived in a tent near a beautiful city. The man led a lazy life and often slept from morning until night. The woman decided to try to change his habits.

(3) Finally, he came to a camp. He asked the people at the camp if they had seen his horse and dog and the fox. He was so sad when he talked about what he had lost that he began weeping.

(4) Later when he returned home, he became hardworking.

(5) One morning she went outside and put a big round loaf of bread beside a heap of ash. Then she went back inside the tent and said to her husband, “Today is a wonderful day. Many birds have come to our ash heap. They are flying around something.”

4. Match phrases from Part I and Part II to make correct sentences.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Part I</th>
<th>Part II</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. change his habits</td>
<td>(1) a small hill of things that were burned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. chased ___</td>
<td>(2) acted like</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. collecting fuel ___</td>
<td>(3) animal that looks like a dog</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d. decided ___</td>
<td>(4) can’t move something</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e. delighted ___</td>
<td>(5) cooked flour and water</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f. dismounted ___</td>
<td>(6) did not get out of bed all day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g. entered the palace</td>
<td>(7) did not like to work hard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h. fox ___</td>
<td>(8) do things differently</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i. frantic ___</td>
<td>(9) got off a horse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>j. good sign ___</td>
<td>(10) it became dark</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k. heap of ash ___</td>
<td>(11) made up his mind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l. lamenting a death ___</td>
<td>(12) ran after</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m. laughingly ___</td>
<td>(13) something that means things will be well</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n. led a lazy life ___</td>
<td>(14) strings that go on a horse’s head</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o. loaf of bread ___</td>
<td>(15) talking quietly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p. murmuring ___</td>
<td>(16) to get wood and other things to burn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>q. night had fallen ___</td>
<td>(17) to make sounds when you are happy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r. precious turquoise bead ___</td>
<td>(18) valuable small green ball</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s. pretended ___</td>
<td>(19) very happy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t. reins ___</td>
<td>(20) very worried</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u. slept from morning until night ___</td>
<td>(21) water came out of someone’s eyes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>v. stuck ___</td>
<td>(22) weeping because someone died</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>w. weeping ___</td>
<td>(23) went into a big building</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5. Choose the correct word in bold.

a. One morning she go/gone/went outside.
b. She put/putting/putted a big round loaf of bread beside a heap of ash.
c. Then she went/go/gone back inside the tent.
d. Today was/is/am/are a wonderful day.
e. Many birds have come/came/coming to our ash heap.
f. They are fly/flying/flies/flew around something.
g. The man deciding/decided/decidingly that he must get up.
h. When he go/goes/went out to the ash heap he found a large piece of bread.
i. He thinking/thought this was a good sign.
j. I are/am/is going hunting tomorrow.

6. Mark these sentences T (true) or F (false).

a. The man found his horse, gun, and dog.  T F
b. Some people beat the man because he was laughing.  T F
c. Some people beat the man because he was weeping.  T F
d. Birds were flying around a piece of meat.  T F
e. The husband wanted his wife to become hard-working.  T F
f. The man married the King’s daughter.  T F
g. The King’s daughter lost her valuable watch.  T F
h. The man stopped being lazy.  T F

7. Write answers to these questions.

a. Who lost a valuable bead?
b. What lesson does this story teach?
c. Why did the man stop being lazy?
d. Why was the wife not happy with her husband?
e. How did the man become rich?
f. Why was the man looking for his horse and dog?
g. Where did the man put his gun?
h. What did the wife prepare for her husband?
The Frog Robber

1. Vocabulary

swollen བྱིམ་
a frog leapt out སྟད་མེ་ ལེགས་
handsome རྐྱེན་
a rich landlord སྨན་དང་
livestock འབྲི་མིན
wife སྐོར།
watchdogs འབྲུག་མའི
tiptoed བྱོ་བྱོ་
yak shed སྤེལ་
small turquoise lion ཚྭ་ཕྲུག་
had neither children nor livestock ད་དེ་ད་དེ་
painful knee added to her discomfort སྣག་སྒུར་
put a hammer up the other’s sleeve བོད་ཀྱི་ཐོན་
in a very high and loud voice བྱོང་བོ་
defecated གྲོགས་
excrement གྲོད།
needles ཐྷིག་
atop གཞི།
sheep’s stomach ཤང་གི་བར
fresh dung ཤང་སུངས།
entrance ཐོག།
drove the livestock away རུང་།
punish him སྒོགས།
Wake up! གྱུ་མ་
robbers སྦེ་ན།
delivered a baby ལྷུ་བྱེད།
lit a fire རོག་
trying to smother the fire སྦྱེན།
punish him སྒོགས།
started to slip གཞི།
treasure དབང་།
put a hammer up the other’s sleeve བོད་ཀྱི་ཐོན་
Many years ago, an old woman had neither children nor livestock. She lived by a river. One of her knees was very painful and this added to her discomfort.

One day her knee was very swollen. She warmed herself by a fire to ease the pain. Suddenly her swollen knee opened up and a frog leapt out. The old woman was very surprised and angry. She said, “I have no money and no children. I need money and food, not a frog!”

Just as she was about to throw the frog into the fire it said, “Dear Mother, I am your son. Keep me and one day I will help you.” The old woman thought for a moment and decided to let the frog live.

Many days later the frog became a handsome and strong boy. The old woman felt very happy.

Years passed and the boy grew older and stronger. His name was Dawa. One day his mother said, “Dawa, we have no food and money. We are very poor. You must find some food.”

Dawa knew this was true and decided to rob a rich landlord who had the most livestock and money in the village. That night Dawa waited near the landlord’s home until the landlord, his guards, and the watchdogs were asleep. Then he tiptoed to the yak shed and let all the yaks out. Then he killed the watchdogs and put two big black pots in their place.

He went inside the tent where the landlord and his wife were sleeping. Above the landlord’s bed there was a small turquoise lion. Dawa stole it, defecated, put the excrement in the treasure’s place, and put some needles atop the excrement.

He put a sheep’s stomach under the landlord’s wife’s bed.

Two guards were also sleeping in the tent. He put some grass in one guard’s hair and put a hammer up the other’s sleeve.

He went to the door, put some fresh dung at the entrance, and put a large stone on top of the tent door.

Finally, he drove the livestock away while shouting in a very high and loud voice. The landlord quickly woke up and immediately felt for his treasure. The needles coated in excrement pricked his fingers. Angry and fearful he shouted to his wife, “Wake up, wake up, robbers have come!”

His wife replied, “I delivered a baby last night and I can’t get up.”

The landlord shouted to the two guards. The guard with grass in his hair quickly lit a fire. The grass in his hair caught fire. The other guard, in trying to smother the fire, struck the man’s head with the hammer in his sleeve, killing him.

The guard was now afraid that the landlord would punish him and ran to the door. When he stepped on the dung he started to slip and grabbed a rope tied from the tent doorframe top to a stake in the ground. This made the stone Dawa had put on top of the tent door fall on his head.

Now the second guard was also dead.

The landlord ran out and called to his watchdogs. There was no answer. The landlord picked up some stones and threw one at a “dog.” There was the sound of breaking metal. He threw another stone at the other “dog” and heard the same sound. When he went near, he saw his “dogs” were broken pots.

Dawa ran home and showed his mother his treasures. She was happy and, later they lived a happy life together.
3. Write answers to these questions.

a. How did the two guards die?

b. Why did needles prick the landlord’s fingers?

c. Why did the landlord’s wife think she had delivered a baby?

d. What treasure did Dawa steal?

e. Why did the old woman want to put the frog in the fire?

f. Who was Dawa?

g. Why did one guard hit the other guard with a hammer?

h. Was Dawa always a frog?

i. Why were the pots broken?

j. Who killed the watchdogs?

k. Why did one guard’s hair start to burn?

l. Why did Dawa and his mother live a happy life in the end?

4. Match the characters in Part I with the phrases in Part II.

**PART I**

a. a frog ___  
b. a guard ___  
c. Dawa ___  
d. old woman ___  
e. the landlord ___  
f. the landlord’s wife ___  
g. two watchdogs ___  
h. yaks ___

**PART II**

1. a stone fell on his head  
2. became a young man  
3. broke two pots  
4. fingers were pricked by needles  
5. had a painful knee  
6. had straw in his hair  
7. killed a guard  
8. killed the watchdogs  
9. lived happily together  
10. she was very angry  
11. stole a treasure  
12. thought she had delivered a baby  
13. was handsome

5. Choose the correct word in bold.

a. He **going/went** to the door.

b. He **put/putted/puter** some fresh dung at the entrance.

c. He put a large stone **on/at/in top of** the tent door.

d. He **driving/drove/driver** the livestock away.

e. He was **shouted/shouting/shouts** in a very high and loud voice.

f. The landlord quickly **waken/woke** up.

  g. He immediately felt **in/for/of/to** his treasure.
1. Vocabulary

collecting yak dung for fuel

fetch water

twenty years passed

relatives

simple food

whispered

grasped his walking stick

loaned

was treated unkindly

contained

saddened

mounted a horse

permanently

established his own tent

I broke a promise to our mother
Pencu lived a happy life with his wife, Lhamo, and his sons Dorji, Renchin, and Gama in a big tent near a river. Lhamo worked at home milking and collecting yak dung for fuel. Every morning Pencu took the livestock to the mountain. Dorji, Renchin, and Gama did housework and helped their mother fetch water.

Twenty years passed. Pencu and Lhamo got older. One by one, the sons left their parents’ home and each established his own tent.

Now, Pencu and Lhamo’s lives were very simple. They lived in an old tent and they only had two sheep because they had given their other livestock to their sons. They ate simple food.

One day Lhamo died. Pencu was now alone. Some time later his cousin, Tsomu, visited his tent and was very sad to see the poor old man. Pencu had not eaten for days. He was old, weak, and thin. Tsomu gave Pencu some hot milk and tsamba. “Pencu, you don’t need to live like this!” Tsomu said.

Then she left the tent and found two of Pencu’s relatives. They talked about Pencu for half an hour and then hurried away. That afternoon Tsomu and the two men returned. Tsomu sat beside Pencu and said gently, “You need someone to care for you. Please come outside the tent and see who are there.”

Pencu grasped his walking stick and left the tent. When he came outside he saw his three sons waiting for him. They were not pleased. They said, “One month he will live with Dorji, then with Renchin, and the following month with Gama.” Pencu did as he was told. He was treated unkindly by each of them during his stay at their homes.

Three months later Tsomu came to visit. She learned what had happened and was saddened by what she heard. She whispered something to Pencu and then returned to her home.

The next day Pencu got up early and told Renchin that he would go to Lhasa. “Many years ago, I loaned one thousand yuan to a man in Lhasa. Now I have little time to live so I must get the money,” he said. He mounted a horse and rode away. Some days later Pencu returned. Pencu’s sons smiled when they saw him return and helped him get off his horse.

Renchin noticed that Pencu was holding a chest and thought that it must contain the money. “Father, did you get the money?” Renchin asked softly. Pencu said nothing. He sat on the grassland. His three sons sat around him.

“I was wrong, Father,” Renchin said sadly. “I’m sorry. I broke a promise to our mother. She wanted me to take care of you. I did not keep my promise. I was unkind to you.”

Pencu did not feel angry. He felt sorry for his son. Renchin said, “Now please come and stay permanently in my tent. I will be kind to you.” Renchin helped Pencu stand and they walked together to Renchin’s tent. Pencu entered the warm tent with his sons. That night Pencu was happy. He ate mutton, drank milk tea, and talked with his sons all night. His three sons were very kind to him because they were thinking of the locked chest. They very much wanted the money they thought it contained.

When Pencu died, his sons were not sad. They took the heavy chest, looked at each other, and smiled. Renchin opened the chest. It was full of stones. They took the stones out of the chest. There was no money inside.

They looked at their dead father and shouted angrily at him.

Tsomu heard them from her tent. She knew what had happened and laughed.
བོད་ལྷག་བོད་བོད་

བོད་སྲིད་སྲིད་བོད་སྲིད་སྲིད་རིམ་ལེགས། གསར་བོད་བོད་དམ་ཐབས་མི་བོད་བོད་ལྷག་བོད་བོད་ལྷག་ཞབས་བོད་ཁྲིད་སྲིད་སྲིད་རིམ་ལེགས།

འཛིན་བོད་བོད་བོད་བོད་བོད་ལྷག་བོད་བོད་ལྷག་བོད་བོད་ལྷག་བོད་བོད་ལྷག་བོད་བོད་ལྷག་བོད་བོད་ལྷག་

ཇོ་ཁྲིད་སྲིད་སྲིད་རིམ་ལེགས། གསར་བོད་བོད་དམ་ཐབས་མི་བོད་བོད་ལྷག་བོད་བོད་ལྷག་ཞབས་བོད་ཁྲིད་སྲིད་སྲིད་རིམ་ལེགས།

}}

•211•
a. Pencu took the livestock to the mountain and Gama did housework. ___
b. Lhamo worked at home milking and collecting yak dung for fuel. ___
c. Now, Pencu and Lhamo’s lives were very simple. ___
d. The sons left their parents’ home and each established his own tent. ___
e. Pencu and Lhamo got older. ___
f. Pencu lived a happy life with Lhamo, and his sons Dorji, Renchin, and Gama. ___
g. They ate simple food. ___
h. They lived in an old tent and they only had two sheep. ___
i. Twenty years passed. ___
5. Match phrases from Part I and Part II to make correct sentences.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PART I</th>
<th>PART II</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. “I will be ___</td>
<td>(1) not feel angry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. He ate mutton, drank milk ___</td>
<td>(2) the money they thought it contained.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. He felt sorry ___</td>
<td>(3) his sons were not sad.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d. His three sons were very kind ___</td>
<td>(4) for his son.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e. Pencu did ___</td>
<td>(5) and stay permanently in my tent.”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f. Pencu entered the ___</td>
<td>(6) kind to you.”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g. Renchin helped Pencu stand ___</td>
<td>(7) and they walked together to Renchin’s tent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h. Renchin said, “Now please come ___</td>
<td>(8) warm tent with his sons.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i. That night Pencu ___</td>
<td>(9) was happy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>j. They very much wanted ___</td>
<td>(10) tea, and talked with his sons all night.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k. When Pencu died ___</td>
<td>(11) to him because they were thinking of the locked chest.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6. What lesson does this story teach?

| a. Stones are heavy. |
| b. Children may not really love their parents. |
| c. Lhasa is far away. |
| d. Tsamba is a very good food. |
Mother did not love the youngest of her three beautiful daughters. The two oldest daughters had beautiful clothes while Youngest Daughter had only old dirty clothes.

The mother owned a white cow. When she told her two oldest daughters to take White Cow out to graze, she gave them a good meal to take with them. However, when she told Youngest Daughter to take White Cow out to graze, she gave her nothing.

One day Youngest Daughter was with White Cow in a forested area. Youngest Daughter was hungry and began eating some leaves. White Cow said, “Poor girl, come here. Shut your eyes and don’t open them until I tell you to.”

Youngest Daughter closed her eyes until White Cow said to open them. When she did open her eyes, she saw a lot of food on the ground. After that day White Cow always gave her food. Soon
Youngest Daughter became even more beautiful.

One day Youngest Daughter’s mother discovered White Cow was giving food to Youngest Daughter. She decided to slaughter White Cow.

The next morning when they were far from Youngest Daughter’s home, White Cow said, “Youngest Daughter, your mother and sisters know that I am helping you. They will slaughter me today. Don’t be sad. After I die, they’ll offer you some of my cooked flesh. Don’t eat it. Put some of my flesh and my bones in a bag and put it in the cave near the river. Let three days pass and then come to the cave. You will meet someone.”

White Cow was slaughtered that afternoon after they returned home. Youngest Daughter exactly followed White Cow’s instructions. Three days later she went to the cave and found White Cow very much alive. Youngest Daughter was so happy that she burst into tears.

“Don’t cry,” said White Cow. “I will help you again. Now you must go home. If you don’t, your mother will know what has happened.” Youngest Daughter agreed and went home.

The next day the prince of the local area invited all the girls of the country to a party. The two oldest daughters dressed up and got ready to go to the party with their mother. Youngest Daughter wanted to go too. Her mother threw a handful of barley into the ashes of their cooking fire and said, “After you put all the barley back in the bowl you may come to the party.”

After the mother and her two oldest daughters left, Youngest Daughter began weeping. Then White Cow appeared with many birds and very beautiful clothes. “Put on these clothes,” said White Cow. “Go to the party with me.”

Youngest Daughter looked at the ash and said, “But I must separate the barley from the ash.”

White Cow motioned to the birds. In a flash, the birds had picked up all the barley and put it in the bowl. Not a single grain remained in the ash.

Youngest Daughter felt very happy, put on the beautiful clothes, mounted White Cow, and soon they reached the party. When she arrived everyone looked at her. No one knew who this beautiful girl was—including her mother and her sisters. The prince saw her, fell in love with her at once, and danced with her the entire evening.

At the end of the party, he asked her to be his wife. She said that she must ask her mother for permission. Her mother was surprised to learn that the beautiful girl was her youngest daughter. She mumbled, “Uh… yes, of course… she can marry you. She is my best daughter.”

The prince and the girl later married and lived a happy life with White Cow.
3. Put these sentences in the correct order.

a. ___ “Put on these clothes,” said White Cow. “Go to the party with me.”
b. ___ A mother did not love the youngest of her three beautiful daughters.
c. ___ After that day White Cow always gave her food.
d. ___ In a flash, the birds had picked up all the barley and put it in the bowl.
e. ___ One day Youngest Daughter’s mother discovered White Cow was giving food to Youngest Daughter.
f. ___ Soon Youngest Daughter became even more beautiful.
g. ___ The prince of the local area invited all the girls of the country to a party.
h. ___ The prince and the girl later married and lived a happy life with White Cow.
i. ___ The prince saw her, fell in love with her at once, and danced with her the entire evening.
j. ___ She told her two oldest daughters to take White Cow out to graze.
k. ___ White Cow said, “Poor girl, come here.”
l. ___ White Cow was slaughtered that afternoon after they returned home.
m. ___ Youngest Daughter closed her eyes until White Cow said to open them.
n. ___ Youngest Daughter exactly followed White Cow’s instructions.
o. ___ Youngest Daughter felt very happy, and put on the beautiful clothes.
p. ___ Youngest Daughter began eating some leaves.

4. Write answers to these questions.

a. Who did the mother not love?
b. When Youngest Daughter took the cow out to graze, what did her mother give her?
c. Why did White Cow tell Youngest Daughter to close her eyes?
d. Why did the mother slaughter White Cow?
e. What did White Cow tell Youngest Daughter to do?
f. What did the prince invite the local girls to?
g. What did Youngest Daughter have to do to be able to go to the party?
h. What appeared with White Cow?
i. What did White Cow bring?
j. Who did the prince fall in love with?

5. Crossword

Across
1. “After I die, they’ll offer you some of my cooked ______…”
3. In a ______, the birds had picked up all the barley.
7. The two oldest daughters ______ed up and got ready to go to the party.

Down
2. She decided to ______ White Cow.
4. She ______, “Uh… yes, of course… she can marry you.”
5. One day Youngest Daughter was with White Cow in a ______ area.
6. White Cow ______ed to the birds.
The Sun’s Reply

1. Vocabulary

widower; widower
not only…but…
recovering
unconscious
justice
sheep’s wool
flick
only living relative
collected fuel
fainted
sunstroke
westward
rescue
An old widower lived in a cottage in a beautiful forest with Dawa, his grandson. Dawa was the old man’s only living relative. Dawa was very young and innocent. The man was very old and could not do any work. Dawa not only looked after his grandfather but he also did the housework, collected fuel from the forest, and fetched water.

Dawa’s grandfather became seriously ill and Dawa cared for him day and night. The old man slowly improved. Spring was coming and the old man was nearly well. He could now stand for a few minutes. Dawa was very glad that his grandfather was recovering.

The old man had been ill in bed for a long time. Now that he was better, he wanted to sit in the sun. Dawa took his grandfather outside and helped him sit in a chair. The old man said, “I’m thirsty. I want to drink some water.”

“I’ll bring you some water immediately,” said Dawa and went into the cottage. The old man now felt tired and fainted because of the heat from the sun.

Dawa returned, saw that his grandfather was unconscious, and thought he had died of sunstroke. He shouted, “What kind of sun are you to take Grandfather’s life? I will look for your mother and look for justice.”

The brave boy took a sack of wheat for food and walked westward looking for the sun. On the way he met a herdsman. The herdsman asked, “Boy, where are you going?”

“I’m going to look for the sun’s mother,” replied Dawa.

The herdsman said, “Oh! People say the sun’s mother is very kind. When you meet her, please ask her what I should do when the sheep’s wool has grown so long that the sheep can no longer walk.”

“I will,” said Dawa.

“People also say that the sun’s home is far away. Will you ever get there?” asked the herdsman.

“I can,” said Dawa. “I’ll get there even if it takes me a hundred years.”

Later Dawa met a sheep. The sheep said, “Brave boy, let me help you. Hold onto my horns and I’ll take you to the sun’s mother.” Dawa was surprised to hear this. He sat on the sheep’s back and held its horns. The sheep leapt into the sky and flew westward. After a long time they reached a beach and saw a beautiful castle.

“This is what you have been looking for. Now, please go in. I’ll wait for you,” said the sheep.

Dawa knocked at the door. An old woman opened the door and said in surprise, “Boy, how did you get here?”

“Are you the sun’s mother?” asked Dawa.

“Yes, can I help you?” replied the old woman. She let him into the palace and Dawa told her what had happened. The old woman gave him much delicious food to eat and said, “Don’t worry, good child. When my son gets back, he will find a way to rescue your grandfather. Do you have anything else to ask me?”

“Yes,” replied Dawa and told her what the herdsman had said. Just then, the sun came in. The old woman told her son what the herdsman had said.

The sun said, “The herdsman should cut the sheep’s wool twice a year. The sheep won’t be too hot and the herdsman can spin the wool for clothing and also make carpets.”

The old woman then told her son about Dawa’s grandfather. The sun said, “He’s not dead. He only fainted because of the heat. Flick some cold water on his face and he’ll be okay.”

Dawa thanked them and left the castle. On his way home, he told the herdsman what the sun had said. When he got home, he did as the sun said and his grandfather was well. Since that time the grandfather and the grandson spent a happy life together.
The sheep said, "Brave boy, let me help you.

Spring was coming and _______

Dawa thanked them

He shouted, "What kind of sun are you to take Grandfather’s life? _______

Since that time the grandfather and _______

Spring was coming and _______

The man was very old _______

The sheep leapt into the sky _______

The sheep said, “Brave boy, let me help you. _______
4. Write answers to these questions.

a. Where did Dawa and his grandfather live?
b. Could the grandfather do any work?
c. When the grandfather became seriously ill, what did Dawa do?
d. When did the grandfather become better?
e. Where did he like to sit?
f. When Dawa returned with the water, what did he think had happened to his grandfather?
g. What was Dawa going to look for?
h. Whom did Dawa meet as he traveled?
i. What was the herdsman’s question for the sun’s mother?
j. How did he get to the sun’s mother?
k. What did the sun say the herdsman should do?
l. What did the sun say happened to his grandfather?

5. Put these words in the blanks below.

a. ____ old widower lived ____ _____ cottage _____ _____ beautiful forest _____ Dawa.
b. Dawa was ______ old man’s only living relative.
c. Dawa was very young ______ innocent.
d. ______ man was very old _____ could not work.
e. Dawa not only looked _____ his grandfather but he also did ______ housework, collected fuel _____ _____ forest, _____ fetched water.
f. Dawa’s grandfather became ill _____ Dawa cared _____ him day _____ night.
g. _____ old man improved.
h. Spring was coming _____ _____ old man was nearly well.
i. He could now stand _____ _____ few minutes.
j. The old man had been ill in bed _____ _____ long time.
k. Now that he was better, he wanted _____ sit _____ _____ sun.
l. Dawa took his grandfather outside _____ helped him sit _____ _____ chair.
m. _____ old man said, “I’m thirsty. I want _____ drink some water.”
n. “I’ll bring you some water immediately,” said Dawa _____ went _____ _____ cottage.
o. _____ old man now felt tired _____ fainted because _____ _____ heat _____ _____ sun.
p. Dawa thought he had died _____ sunstroke.
q. He shouted, “What kind _____ sun are you _____ take Grandfather’s life?”
r. “I will look _____ your mother and look _____ justice.”
Gold Girl, Silver Girl, and Wood Girl

1. Vocabulary

riverside སླུས་པ།

floated འོ་བསྲེག།

wrap འབྲུག་པ། འབྲུགས་པ། བན་པ།

hatchet ཤུག།

tear གཞུག།

plopped down བུག། བུག།

sank མི་ཐོབ། བེད་པ།

beggars སློར།

drowned འབྲུགས་པ། བན་པ།

intended to མི་ཐོབ། བེད་པ། བོད་པ། རིག་པ།

in a bad mood འཁོར་གཞི།

burned to death གཞིས་ལྕེབ་དེ།
Long ago, a king had two daughters and a servant. His oldest daughter was named Gold Girl, his youngest daughter was named Silver Girl, and the servant was named Wood Girl. Gold Girl had a gold bowl, Silver Girl had a silver bowl, and the servant had a wood bowl.

One day the three young women went to the riverside to play. Wood Girl had an evil heart. She said to Gold Girl and Silver Girl, “Let’s put our bowls in the river and see whose bowl floats.” The girls agreed.

First, Gold Girl put her bowl in the river, then Silver Girl put hers in and, finally, Wood Girl put hers in the river. Gold Girl and Silver Girl’s bowls sank to the river bottom. Only Wood Girl’s bowl floated. Gold Girl felt very afraid. She knew her father would be very angry if she lost her bowl. She jumped into the river to find it.

When Silver Girl saw this, she was very sad. She was afraid to return home without the bowls and without her sister. She told Wood Girl to go back to the palace and bring food. From that moment on Silver Girl and Wood Girl became beggars.

After many days of travel they came to a country where the King was about to choose a new wife. He had called all the young unmarried women of the country to his palace. The next morning he would wrap a flower in a cloth and throw it among the women. He would marry the woman who caught the flower.

When the King threw the flower, Silver Girl and Wood Girl were both standing among the women. Silver Girl caught the flower but Wood Girl snatched it out of her hands. The King married Wood Girl. The new queen made Silver Girl her herdswoman. Every day Silver Girl took the livestock out to the grassland to graze. It was a hard life and she did not have enough food to eat.

One day as she was herding she came to the river where her sister had drowned. Feeling cold, hungry, and sad, she cried out her sister’s name. To her surprise, Gold Girl rose out of the water and gave Silver Girl some food.

Gold Girl said, “After I jumped in the river, River King rescued and married me. If you can’t eat all of the food, don’t take it back with you. Hide it somewhere,” and then Gold Girl sank back into the river.

Silver Girl returned home with the food she could not eat. She had forgotten to hide it. When Wood Girl saw the food she angrily demanded, “Who gave you this food?”

Silver Girl honestly told her how she had seen her sister in the river and that Gold Girl had given her the food.

Wood Girl said, “Tomorrow I will herd the livestock. You cut the King’s hair.”

The next day Wood Girl took a hatchet with her when she went to herd. She intended to kill Gold Girl.

When Silver Girl was cutting the King’s hair, a tear fell on the King’s neck. The King asked, “Why are you crying?”

Silver Girl said, “Wood Girl went to the river to kill my sister.” Then she told him how she had caught the flower, how Wood Girl had snatched it away from her, and how she did not have enough food to eat.

The King was angry and sorry for all that had happened to Silver Girl. He and Silver Girl decided to kill Wood Girl. They dug a deep hole and made a fire in the bottom. They covered the hole with cloth and put food nearby.

When Wood Girl returned she was in a bad mood because she had not killed Gold Girl. When she plopped down on the cloth she fell into the hole and burned to death.

Later Silver Girl married the King and they lived a very happy life together.
They came to a country and the King was about to choose a new wife.

Gold Girl’s and Silver Girl’s bowls sank to the river bottom.

He would marry the woman who caught the flower.

It was a hard life and she did not have enough food to eat.

Later Silver Girl married the King and they lived a very happy life together.

Long ago, a king had two daughters and a servant.

One day the three young women went to the riverside to play.

She knew her father would be very angry if she lost her bowl.

She was afraid to return home without the bowls and without her sister.

The King asked, “Why are you crying?”

The King married Wood Girl.

The King was angry and sorry for all that had happened to Silver Girl.

The next day Wood Girl took a hatchet with her when she went to herd.

To her surprise, Gold Girl rose out of the water and gave Silver Girl some food.

Wood Girl returned and she was in a bad mood because Gold Girl wasn’t dead.

When Wood Girl saw the food she angrily demanded, “Who gave you this food?”
Across
2. She _____ped down on the cloth.
3. Silver Girl and Wood Girl became _____.
5. She ______ to kill Gold Girl.
7. She came to the river where her sister had ______.

Down
1. Only Wood Girl’s bowl _______.
3. She fell into the hole and ______ed to death.
4. Gold Girl’s and Silver Girl’s bowls _____ to the river bottom.
6. When Silver Girl was cutting the King’s hair, a _____ fell on the King’s neck.
8. The three young women went to the _____ side to play.
9. He would _____ a flower in a cloth and throw it among the women.

5. Write answers to these questions.
   a. What were the girls’ names?
   b. What kind of bowl did the servant have?
   c. Where did the girls play?
   d. What did the servant say they should do with their bowls?
   e. Who jumped in the river?
   f. Who was afraid to go home?
   g. What did they become?
   h. How did the King choose a new wife?
   i. Who caught the flower?
   j. Who snatched it out of her hand?
   k. Who became a herdswoman?
   l. Who rose out of the water?
   m. Why was Silver Girl crying?
   n. What did the King and Silver Girl decide to do?
1. Vocabulary

made a living: བོད་ཀྱི་ཐོག བོད་ཀྱི་རིག
uncultivated fields: ཡིག་ཚུལ་མི་ལེན།
sealed the door: འོག་ཚ་མཁས་
single: མགྲིན།
crowded: སྟེ་འབྲད།
hammer: བདེ།
rebel: འཛིན་པ།
at sunrise: བཅོམ་སྣང་
by any means possible: བོད་ཀྱི་ཐོག བོད་ཀྱི་རིག

harvest: བོད་ཀྱི་བོད་ཀྱི་རིག
obligated to pay taxes: འབྲས་འབུལ་ཤེས་འབུལ།
flat and empty land: ཡིག་ཚུལ་མི་ལེན།
at dusk: འོང་དུས།
their histories: འབྲས་འབུལ་ཤེས་འབུལ།
shake: རགས།
banged: འོག་ཚ་རྟེན།
gasoline: བོད་ཀྱི་རིག
A poor peasant made a living by farming his own fields and working for other people. Even though he worked very hard, he was still poor because he had to pay taxes to the local king. He had to give the King half of his wheat harvest and money for uncultivated fields.

One year, the weather was so bad that he had no harvest at all but he was still obligated to pay taxes. When he told the King that he had nothing to give, the King replied, “If you can’t pay your taxes, you must leave this village.”

A few days later the angry King sealed the door of the peasant’s house. The poor peasant had nowhere to live so he left.

He had nothing. He was thirsty and hungry. As he walked through a flat and empty land, he noticed a single tall tree. He noticed a horse’s head under the tree. There was a piece of meat on it. He climbed up into the tree, ate the pieces of flesh, and sat on a branch.

Thunder came from gray clouds at dusk. Men wearing black hats and riding on horses rode toward the tree. They crowded under it and whispered.

“They must be ghosts. Who, except ghosts, would come out in the dark?” thought the poor peasant. Suddenly the horse head dropped to the ground. The men were frightened and galloped off.

He climbed down the next morning and saw a gold cup full of wine under the tree. He drank the wine. At once tsamba and meat appeared. “How lucky I am!” he thought.

After eating, he continued walking and met a man with a stick. They told each other their histories. The peasant realized that the man with the stick was as poor as he was. “Shall we sleep in the day and walk during the night?” asked the peasant. “I’m afraid of thieves.”

“Don’t worry,” said the other man. “We can use my stick. When I throw my stick at someone they will surely die. But now we should find something to eat.”

Then the peasant gave the man food from the magic cup, they became friends, and traveled together.

Some days later they met a farmer holding a hammer. “What are you doing with the hammer?” they asked.

“If you hit the ground with this hammer, a building will rise up,” said the man. “But the hammer does not give me food. That’s what I’m looking for now.” The peasant and the man with a stick realized he was as poor as they were, gave him some food from the magic cup, made friends with him, and then they traveled together.

Some days later they met an old peasant carrying a skin. They asked him, “What are you doing with that skin?”

The old peasant said, “If I shake this a very powerful wind will blow or it will rain. But the skin does not give me food. That’s what I’m looking for now.” The other three men realized he was as poor as they were, gave him some food from the magic cup, made friends with him, and then they traveled together. As they walked, they talked about how to rebel against the greedy and cruel King. When night came they were near the King’s palace. The man with the hammer banged on the ground several times and soon a big beautiful palace appeared.

The next morning at sunrise the King and his servants saw the beautiful palace. The King was angry and ordered his soldiers to burn it down. His servants put gasoline all around the palace and lit it. As the gasoline was burning the peasant stood on the palace roof and shook the skin. A strong wind immediately put the fire out.

The King shouted, “Destroy that palace by any means possible!”

The peasant shook the skin again and it began to rain hard. Most of the King’s soldiers died from the storm and, at last, the peasants lived a happy life.
3. Match phrases from Part I and Part II to make correct sentences.

PART I

a. __“If you hit the ground with this hammer,
b. __“They must be ghosts. Who, except ghosts,
c. __A few days later the angry King
d. __A peasant made a living by farming
e. __After eating, he continued walking
f. __As he walked through a flat and empty land,
g. __As they walked, they talked about how
h. __He climbed down the next morning
i. __Many soldiers died from the storm and,
j. __The weather was so bad that he had no harvest at all
k. __Later they met an old peasant
l. __The King shouted, “Destroy that
m. __At sunrise, the King and
n. __The old peasant said, “If I shake this a very powerful wind will blow or it will rain.
o. __Then the peasant gave the man food from the magic cup,

PART II

1. a building will rise up,” said the man.
2. and met a man with a stick.
3. and saw a gold cup full of wine under the tree.
4. at last, the peasants lived a happy life.
5. but he was still obligated to pay taxes.
6. But the skin does not give me food. That’s what I’m looking for now.”
7. palace by any means possible!”
8. carrying a skin.
9. he noticed a single tall tree.
10. his own fields and working for other people.
11. his servants saw the beautiful palace.
12. sealed the door of the peasant’s house.
13. they became friends, and traveled together.
14. to rebel against the greedy and cruel King.
15. would come out in the dark?” thought the poor peasant.
4. Write answers to these questions.

a. How did the peasant make a living?
b. What did he have to pay the King?
c. When he couldn’t pay his taxes, what did the King say?
d. After the King sealed the door to his house, what did the peasant do?
e. What did he see under the tree?
f. What frightened the men?
g. What happened after he drank the wine?
h. Whom did the peasant meet?
i. Whom did they meet?
j. What could the hammer do?
k. What could the old peasant carrying a skin do?
l. What did they plan to do to the King?
m. Why was the king angry?
n. What did his servants do to the building?
o. What put the fire out?
p. What did the soldiers die from?

5. Find words. The words may be spelled up ↑, down ↓, forward →, backward ←, and diagonally ↘↘ ↗↗. 

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
<th>M</th>
<th>F</th>
<th>G</th>
<th>K</th>
<th>P</th>
<th>O</th>
<th>S</th>
<th>S</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>K</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>Q</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>Z</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>W</td>
<td>U</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>Q</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>Q</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>V</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>R</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>V</td>
<td>J</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>K</td>
<td>U</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>U</td>
<td>Q</td>
<td>V</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T</td>
<td>U</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>U</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>V</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>Q</td>
<td>K</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>K</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>J</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>J</td>
<td>K</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>V</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>Q</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>W</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R</td>
<td>V</td>
<td>J</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>V</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
6. Put these words in the blanks below: a, the, and, for, by, of, to, at, from, through, with, up, near, on, out, around.

a. ___ peasant made ___ living ___ farming his fields ___ working ___ other people.
b. He had ___ give ___ King half ___ his wheat harvest ___ money ___ uncultivated fields.
c. ___ weather was so bad that he had no harvest ___ all but he still had ___ pay taxes.
d. When he told ___ King that he had nothing ___ give, ___ King replied, “You must leave.”
e. As he walked ___ flat and empty land, he noticed ___ single tall tree.
f. Thunder came ___ gray clouds ___ dusk.
g. “If you hit ___ ground ___ this hammer, ___ building will rise ___.,” said the man.
h. They met ___ farmer holding ___ hammer.
i. “If I shake this ___ wind will blow or it will rain.”
j. “But ___ skin does not give food.”
k. “That’s what I’m looking ___ now.”
l. They talked about how ___ rebel against ___ greedy and cruel King.
m. They were ___ King’s palace.

n. ___ man ___ hammer banged ___ ground ___ soon ___ palace appeared.
o. ___ next morning ___ sunrise, the King ___ his servants saw ___ beautiful palace.
p. ___ King was angry ___ ordered his soldiers ___ burn it down.
q. His servants put gasoline all ___ palace ___ lit it.
r. As ___ gasoline was burning, ___ peasant stood ___ palace roof ___ shook ___ skin.
s. ___ strong wind immediately put ___ fire ___.
t. ___ King shouted, “Destroy that palace ___ any means possible!”
u. ___ peasant shook ___ skin again ___ it began ___ rain hard.
v. Most ___ King’s soldiers died ___ storm ___.
w. ___ last, ___ peasants lived ___ happy life.
1. Vocabulary

spring songs: million | shining: delighted
had / (gave birth to) a baby boy: everyone wondered |
everyone: godess | pretended | worriedly: heart
replied: decided: intended

drown him: goslings: order: servants

cruel: overheard: planned

run away: a horse’s hoofprint: soaked

drip: monk: drug

shocked: had become wild like an animal

hunted: recognize: in prison

fleeing: devised a plan: freed
One beautiful night all the animals were singing their spring songs. The leaves and flowers grew fast and green. The bright spring moon shone on the mountains and lakes. It seemed like a million stars were shining. On this night the Queen had a baby boy, delighting everyone.

Some years later the Queen became very ill. As she was dying she said to the King, “Please don’t look down into a forest if you go to a mountaintop. It will only bring you sadness.” The Queen’s voice became quieter and quieter and then she died. The King felt very sad and wondered why his wife had said this to him.

Despite his wife’s warning, a few days later he went to a mountaintop, looked into the forest, and saw a beautiful woman. She was a devil, but the King thought she was a goddess.

The King was so fascinated by her that he married her. She became his queen and soon gave birth to a son.

Some years later the Queen pretended to be ill. The King loved his beautiful wife very much and worriedly asked, “What can I do to help you get well?” She slyly said nothing because she knew that the King loved her so much that he would do anything for her. Finally she said, “If I eat one thing I will be well again.”

The King quickly asked, “What?”

“Your oldest son’s heart,” replied the Queen.

The King loved his wife so much that he decided to kill his son. The next day he took his son to a lake and intended to drown him. By the bank they saw a mother goose swimming with her goslings. The King said to his son, “Kill these geese!”

His son replied, “No, they are very happy. If Mother were still alive, we would be as happy as they are.” When the King heard this, he could not kill his son. He killed a dog instead and gave his wife its heart.

She happily ate the heart and said, “Now, I am well.”

The next day when she saw the boy playing in the garden, she became very angry and pretended to be ill again. She said to the King, “The heart you gave me was not really the boy’s. I am ill again. Please give me the boy’s heart at once or I will die.”

The King then ordered one of his servants to kill the boy and cut out his heart. But the servant also could not kill the boy. He killed a cat instead and gave its heart to the cruel Queen. She ate it and said she was well.

A few days later when she saw the boy, she again pretended to be ill. This time she said, “I will kill the boy by myself.” Her own son overheard what she said and told his half-brother what she planned to do. Then the two brothers decided to run away together.

After many hours they were very hungry and thirsty and the younger brother became ill. The older brother went looking for water and found some in a horse’s hoofprint. He soaked his shirt in the water and took it to the younger boy. The younger boy drank the water and was then strong enough to walk.

They continued walking for many hours and then the younger brother became ill again. The older brother put him under a tree. He knew that when it rained the water would drip into his brother’s mouth from the leaves. He then went looking for help from a monk whom he thought lived nearby. But it took him many days to find the monk.

When he found the monk he told him his troubles. The monk gave him a drug and told him to return to his brother. When he did find his brother, again he was shocked to see that his brother had become wild like an animal. He hunted with other animals. They had not seen each other for such a long time that his younger brother did not recognize him. But, after the older brother gave his younger brother the drug, he remembered him.

They decided to go back to their home. When they got home, they found that their father was in prison and learned that the Queen planned to kill him. Their father said, “Run away or the Queen will kill you.”

Instead of fleeing, they devised a plan to kill her. They gave her some of the monk’s drug, which killed her. Then they freed their father from prison and lived a happy life together.
3. Match the people in the story (in Part I) with their actions or descriptions (in Part II).

**Part I**

a. the King ___  
b. the first Queen ___  
c. the second Queen ___  
d. the King’s first son ___  
e. the King’s second son ___  
f. the monk ___  
g. the King’s servant ___  

**Part II**

1. he married twice  
2. she was cruel  
3. he brought water for his half-brother  
4. they had the same father but different mothers  
5. he gave a drug to a boy  
6. he was in prison  
7. she put her husband in prison  
8. he became like a wild animal  
9. she died from eating a drug  
10. the people were delighted because she gave birth to a son
4. Put these words in the blanks below: a, the, and, on, for.

One night all _____ animals were singing. _____ leaves _____ flowers grew fast _____ green. _____ bright
moon shone down _____ _____ mountains _____ lakes. It seemed like _____ million stars were shining.
_____ this night _____ Queen had _____ baby boy. Later _____ Queen became very ill. She said to _____
King, “Don’t look down into _____ forest if you go to _____ mountaintop. _____ Queen’s voice became
quieter _____ quieter _____ then she died. _____ King felt very sad _____ wondered why his wife had said
this to him. _____ few days later he went to _____ mountaintop, looked into _____ forest, _____ saw _____
beautiful woman. She was _____ devil, but _____ King thought she was _____ goddess. _____ King was
fascinated by her. She became his queen _____ soon gave birth to _____ son. Later _____ Queen
pretended to be ill. _____ King loved his wife very much _____ worriedly asked, “What can I do to help
you?” She knew that _____ King loved her so much that he would do anything _____ her.

5. Put these sentences in the correct order.

a. After many hours, they were very hungry and the younger brother became ill. ___
b. But after the older brother gave his younger brother the drug he remembered him. ___
c. But it took him many days to find the monk. ___
d. He hunted with other animals. ___
e. He knew that when it rained the water would drip into his brother’s mouth. ___
f. He soaked his shirt in the water and took it to the younger boy. ___
g. He then went looking for help from a monk whom he thought nearby. ___
h. The monk gave him a drug and told him to return to his brother. ___
i. The older brother put him under a tree. ___
j. The older brother went looking for water and found some in a horse’s hoofprint. ___
k. The younger boy drank the water and was then strong enough to walk. ___
l. They continued walking and then the younger brother became ill again. ___
m. His younger brother did not recognize him. ___
n. His brother had become wild like an animal. ___
o. When he found the monk, he told him his troubles. ___
6. Match words from Part I with their definitions in Part II.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Part I</th>
<th>Part II</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. cruel</td>
<td>1. all the people ___</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. delighting</td>
<td>2. answered ___</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. despite</td>
<td>3. even though ___</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d. devised</td>
<td>4. giving off light ___</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e. drown</td>
<td>5. it is inside your chest ___</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f. everyone</td>
<td>6. kill in water ___</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g. fleeing</td>
<td>7. made ___</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h. heart</td>
<td>8. making very happy ___</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i. hunted</td>
<td>9. many more than a thousand ___</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>j. million</td>
<td>10. not kind ___</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k. ordered</td>
<td>11. running away ___</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l. pretended</td>
<td>12. seemed ___</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m. replied</td>
<td>13. to have much water ___</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n. shining</td>
<td>14. tried to kill animals ___</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o. soaked</td>
<td>15. told someone to do something ___</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7. What lesson does this story teach?

- a. Animals like to sing in spring.
- b. Women are evil and cruel.
- c. Kings are always good people.
- d. People who do evil things may get hurt.
The Story of Dokang (ཐེས་བསྡུས་དོ་མང་)

1. Vocabulary

wild animals མིག་པ།
hired སྐྱེན།
fetch water སྦེར།
foggy སྨག་ལེགས།
a bone with meat འབོོད་བོོད་པ།
thunder boomed རྣ་ལུགས།
skeleton གཞུང་རུས།
pounded རྣ་པོ། སེར་ན་སྟེ།
refused ཨོོོ་ཨོོོ། སྟེ། སྟེ། སྟེ། སྟེ།
sleeves ནིན།
paws རོལ།
profusely (much, a lot) ནོར། ནོར།
slipped something into my jacket སྡེར་པོས་ཀྱི་སྲོོང་། སྲོོང་།
chirping རྟ་སྟླ་བ། རྟ་སྟླ་བ།
a hole lined with stone རྗེས་རྗེས་རྗེས། རྗེས་རྗེས་རྗེས།
beseeched Buddha གཞི་མཁྱེན་པོ་ཆོས་གཞི་མཁྱེན་པོ་ཆོས་

rare animals འབོོད་བོོད་པ།
tended སྐྱེན་།
graze (eat grass) སྲེལ།
lazily གངས།
at great danger སྣང་ལེགས། སྣང་ལེགས།
dry and brittle སྨག་ལེགས། སྨག་ལེགས།
roared with pain རྣ་ལུགས། རྣ་ལུགས།
panting རྣ་ལུགས། རྣ་ལུགས།
resolved སྲེལ། སྲེལ། སྲེལ།
a crude thick rope སྲེལ། སྲེལ། སྲེལ།
hacked (chopped, cut) སྲེལ། སྲེལ།
Dokang is a beautiful place. It is a wonderful place for herdsmen and their horses. Yaks and sheep there are strong and fat. Many wild animals also live there, including rare ones. Although it is a beautiful place, Zhaxi made it very bad. All the people who lived in Dokang hated him. This was because a bear killed Zhaxi’s son. Afterwards Zhaxi hated every kind of wild animal, bought guns, and hired hunters to hunt and kill all the wild animals in Dokang.

I was one of his servants. I tended more than one hundred yaks. The only thing that was difficult about this job was worrying about the danger from wild animals on the mountains. One day I got up early as usual. My mother had just fetched water and come inside our tent. She was also one of Zhaxi’s servants. My mother gave me a bag of tsamba with a little butter in the bottom and a bottle of milk tea. When no one was looking, she slipped something into my jacket and said, “Come back early! Don’t come too late for supper!”

I replied, “Yes, Mother,” and left, driving the yaks with my dog up into the mountains to graze. It was a summer morning. Birds were chirping, the grass was wet, and it was foggy on the mountains. The sun lazily shone through the fog and a rainbow curved in the sky.

Later I drove the yaks to a stream to drink and play. I turned and saw my dog giving me a look of hunger. I took my bag and tea from a large bag on the back of my dog. As we were about to eat, I remembered that Mother had given me something. I took it out from my jacket. It was a bone with meat. I realized that the servants often brought meat to Zhaxi and I understood that Mother had stolen this meat at great danger to herself. I felt sad about poor Mother. Terrible things happened when anyone was discovered stealing something from Zhaxi’s home. I beseeched Buddha to protect Mother.

Late that afternoon when I looked up, the weather had become cloudy and soon it began raining. I saw the yaks running up the mountain. I tried to stop them but I couldn’t. My dog ran after them. Thunder boomed and I felt a little afraid.

I ran after the yaks but when I reached the mountaintop, the yaks already had run over the top. Rain fell harder and harder. I had no energy to run after the yaks. I looked for somewhere to hide from the rain and found a hole lined with stone. I went inside. It was very dark and I couldn’t see anything. It was frightening, but it was better than staying outside in the rain.

I leaned against a stone and slept. When I woke, I saw the hole had been nearly completely covered by a large stone. I tried to push it away. Suddenly I heard something moving about above the hole. It sounded like an animal. It was digging in the earth near me. I couldn’t get out. I was a prisoner in this hole.

“This animal will kill me and eat me,” I thought. I was terrified. I began moving deeper into the hole. I felt something. It was dry and brittle. It was the head of a skeleton! Now I knew where Zhaxi’s son’s skeleton was. My heart pounded. I was panting.

I refused to wait to be killed. I resolved to fight! I took off my wet robe, tied the sleeves together, and made a crude thick rope. I pulled out my knife. The animal continued to dig with its paws. Dirt fell on me. It was getting nearer. Suddenly a hole opened between the animal and me.

It was a black bear!

When its foot came through the hole, I caught it with my rope and hacked at it with my knife. The bear bled profusely, roared with pain, and jumped back. I held half its foot in my hand.

The bear could still run. I heard it roar as it ran away. I waited for a long time until I heard no sound. I put my robe back on and put the bloody part of the foot in my bosom. I began digging with my knife.

Soon I had a hole big enough to climb through.

It was dark. I quickly went down the mountain.

I saw the yaks in the distance and drove them toward home. When I arrived, I told Mother everything. A small smile passed across her face. “Thank Buddha nothing happened to you,” she said.
Mother told Zhaxi what had happened. He didn’t believe me at first but, when I took out the bloody piece of the bear’s foot, he was surprised and excited. He called out to six big strong men who worked for him. “Tomorrow morning we will go to the mountain with Caireng to look for the injured bear,” he said to them.

That evening we all talked until morning. After breakfast we went to the mountain. Each man had a gun. We found the hole. Much blood was around it. We followed the blood trail left by the bear. We came to a large rock. We found the bear behind the rock. It was dead.

We sang as we carried the dead bear back to Zhaxi’s camp. Everyone was happy to hear us return. They were glad we had killed such an evil animal.

Zhaxi called me two days later and said, “I will now leave Dokang. Bring my son’s skeleton to my home. I love living here but I have been unkind to all of you who worked for me. I am sorry. Here is one hundred yuan. I give it to you for all the people here and hope that you can forgive me.”

Two days later the people thanked Zhaxi for his money. We brought some food to him and he was very happy to see us before he left. He took our food and rode away on his horse.

From then on our life became happier. I had my own yaks and I took good care of them.
3. Mark these sentences T (true) or F (false).

a. Dokang is a person’s name. T F
b. The bear killed Zhaxi’s servant, Cairang. T F
c. The bear died. T F
d. Zhaxi liked animals very much. T F
e. Cairang’s mother stole some meat from Zhaxi’s home. T F
f. Zhaxi was unhappy to see us before he left. T F

4. Put these sentences in the correct order.

a. ___ I began moving deeper into the hole.
b. ___ I couldn’t get out.
c. ___ I had no energy to run after the yaks.
d. ___ I leaned against a stone and slept.
e. ___ I saw the yaks running up the mountain.
f. ___ I was a prisoner in this hole.
g. ___ I was terrified.
h. ___ I went inside.
i. ___ It sounded like an animal.
j. ___ It was dry and brittle.
k. ___ It was the head of a skeleton!
l. ___ It was dark and I couldn’t see anything.
m. ___ When I looked up, the weather had become cloudy.
n. ___ My dog ran after them.
o. ___ My heart pounded. I was panting.
p. ___ Rain fell harder and harder.
q. ___ I heard something moving above the hole.
r. ___ Thunder boomed and I felt afraid.
s. ___ The hole had been covered by a stone.
5. Choose the correct word in bold.

a. Dokang is/are a beautiful place.

b. There/It is a wonderful place for herdsmen and their horses.

c. Yak/Yaks and sheep/sheeps there are strong and fat.

d. Many wild animals also/too live there.

e. Zhaxi made/making it very bad.

f. All the people who lived/living in Dokang hated him.

g. This was/were because a bear killed Zhaxi’s son.

h. Zhaxi hated every/even kind of wild animal.

6. These sentences have mistakes in capital and small case letters. Underline the mistakes and correct them.

a. i replied, “yes, mother,” and left, Driving the yaks with my dog up into the mountains to Graze.

b. it was a summer morning.

c. birds were chirping, The grass was wet, And it was foggy on the mountains.

d. the sun lazily shone through the fog and a rainbow curved in the Sky.

e. later i drove the yaks to A stream to drink and play.

f. i turned and Saw my dog giving me a look of hunger.

g. i took my Bag and Tea from a large bag on the back of my dog.
Two Boys

1. Vocabulary

- grew up together (were raised together) 
- it was clear (easy to understand) 
- mumbled (spoke unclearly) 
- palace 
- tiredness 
- floods 
- frog 
- spit 
- standing in a line 
- minister 
- festival 
- command (order) 
- forbid (don’t allow) 
- wailing 
- ghost 
- dusk 
- emerge 
- saliva 
- elders 
- celebrated
great king living in Yelong Village had a son named Caireng. A woman and her son, Nima, lived next to the King’s palace.

Caireng and Nima grew up together. Every day they played, ate, and slept together as though they were brothers.

When they were older it was clear that Nima was clever and Caireng was stupid. This was a fact that the King understood very well. This made him very sad. He thought, “Soon I will be old and clever Nima will take the kingdom away from my stupid son! I must send Nima away.”

The next day he called Nima’s mother to his palace and said, “Your son can no longer live here. I’ll kill him if he is not gone within five days.”

Nima’s mother was very surprised to hear this. She wondered why the King would give such a command. However, she only mumbled, “Yes, as you wish,” and sadly returned to her home.

She told Nima, “The King said you must leave or he will kill you.”

Nima asked in shock, “Why does he want me to leave?”

“I don’t know,” replied his mother.

“Don’t worry, Mother. I will go away,” Nima said. “Many years may pass but I will return home some day.”

When Caireng heard that his father had ordered Nima to leave, he went to his father and asked, “Why do you want Nima to leave? If he must leave, I will go with him.”

The King shouted angrily, “You will not! I forbid it!”

Caireng was so angry by what his father said that he left the palace and decided to stay at Nima’s home until Nima left.

The day before Nima was to leave the King called Nima to his palace and said, “Don’t let my son go with you. If you do, I will kill you.”

Late that night when everyone was sleeping, Nima quietly woke up and got ready to leave. Caireng heard him and said, “Take me with you. I can’t be alone. You are my brother,” and began wailing. Nima could not think of anything but to let him go with him.

The two quietly left.

They walked for many days in tiredness and hunger.

One day they noticed many villagers standing on a riverbank. Some were shouting. Some women were crying.

Nima asked a villager, “What’s the matter?” The villager said, “Every year we must feed a ghost in this river a fifteen year old child. If we don’t, the river swells and floods our village. We will die. We don’t have a fifteen-year-old child. This is why we are so sad and afraid.”

“Don’t worry. Tonight we will stay here and kill the ghost,” said Nima. “Now we are tired and very hungry. Could we please have some food?”

The villager said, “Of course, but you must be careful.” Then the villagers gave him some food and drink, left the riverbank, and returned to their homes.

Nima and Caireng ate their dinner. Nima said to Caireng, “Now that dusk has fallen, you go up the river and I’ll stay down the river. Catch and eat any ghost you see.”

At midnight they heard a terrible noise and then each saw a frog emerge out of the water. One frog was silver and one frog was gold. Nima caught the gold frog and ate it. Caireng caught the silver frog and ate it.

The next morning Nima and Caireng went to the village and said to the villagers, “We killed the ghost. You no longer need to worry or be afraid.”

The villagers thanked the boys and said, “Whatever you want we will give you.”

Nima replied, “Thank you but we must go.” The people then gave them some food for their travels. The boys continued on their journey.

After some time Nima found that, when he spit, his saliva turned to gold. Caireng found that, when
he spit, his saliva turned to silver. They were both very surprised.

Three days later they reached another village. The villagers were all on the street standing in a line. Each villager, in turn, went up to a huge pot and spit inside. Nima asked a villager, “Why are you doing this?”

The villager replied, “We don’t have a king. Long ago our elders said, ‘The one that spits gold will be king. The one who spits silver will be his minister.’ So today we are spitting to see who will become the king and who will become the minister. So far, no one has spit gold or silver. We will continue spitting tomorrow.”

The boys decided to come back to the village the next day.

The next morning Caireng stood at the beginning of the line. When he spit, it turned to gold. The people shouted, “We have found our king!”

Nima’s turn finally came. When he spit, it turned to silver. The villagers shouted, “We have found our minister!” The villagers were very happy and excited. They celebrated with a big festival.

Caireng and Nima became the village’s king and minister. Nima returned to his old home and brought his mother to live with him.
བོད་ཡིག་ཤེས་རུ་དང་སེམས་དཔག་ནི་རྩེ་རྒྱ་ཚན་མཐུན་པོ་ཆེན་མོ་ཤེས་རུ་པོ་ཆེན་མོ་རྩེ་རྒྱ་བཞིན་གི་བོད་ཡིག་ཤེས་རུ་ལ་གཞན་གཏོང་ནི་བོད་ཡིག་ཤེས་རུ་ལས་གཏོང་ནི་ཡོང་ན།

སྤོད་ནི་ནག་ལེགས་གུང་གི་དཔལ་ཐུབ་ལ་ཐོབ་ཆེན་མོ་བཞིན་གི་ཤེས་རུ་ཞིབ་བསྟན་ཞི་སྟེ།

སྤོད་ནི་ནག་ལེགས་གུང་གི་དཔལ་ཐུབ་ལ་ཐོབ་ཆེན་མོ་བཞིན་གི་ཤེས་རུ་ཞིབ་བསྟན་ཞི་སྟེ།
A great king living [Caireng son in Yelong had a named Village.]

b. A woman and her son, [Nima, palace the lived to King’s next.]

c. Caireng and [grew Nima together up.]

d. Every day they played, ate, [and together slept though as they brothers were.]

e. When they were older, it [and was was clear that clever stupid Caireng was Nima.]

f. This was a fact [that King the very understood well.]
5. Find the end of each sentence (a-p) from the list of phrases (1-15) below.

a. “The one who spits
b. “Long ago, our elders said,
c. “So far, no one
d. “So today we are spitting to see who will
e. “We will continue
f. After some time Nima found that,
g. Caireng found that, when he spit,
h. Each villager, in turn, went
i. Nima asked a villager,
j. Nima replied,
k. The boys continued
l. The people then gave
m. The villager replied,
n. The villagers were all
o. They were both
p. Three days later

1. ___when he spit, his saliva turned to gold.
2. ___very surprised.
3. ___up to a huge pot and spit inside.
4. ___they reached another village.
5. ___them some food for their travels.
6. ___silver will be his minister.’’
7. ___on their journey.
8. ___on the street standing in a line.
9. ___his saliva turned to silver.
10. ___has spit gold or silver.’’
11. ___become the king and who will become the minister.’’
12. ___’’The one that spits gold will be king.’’
13. ___spitting tomorrow.’’
14. ___’’Why are you doing this?’’
15. ___’’We don’t have a king.’’
16. ___’’Thank you but we must go.’’

6. Write answers to these questions.

a. Who had a son named Caireng?
b. Who was Nima’s father?
c. Who grew up together?
d. Who was clever?
e. Who was stupid?
f. What did the King understand very well?
g. Why did the King want to send Nima away?
h. Who were standing on a riverbank?
i. What ghosts did Nima and Caireng catch?
j. Who spit gold?
k. Who spit silver?
l. Why did Nima return to his home?
A Nine-Headed Monster

1. Vocabulary

executioner སྙིང་པོ།
making butter གསང་མབུ་
mouthfuls གསང་མབུ
looked through གཞན་ཐོག
so thin you could see his bones བྱ་མཚན་བུ་ཆུ་བུ་དགུང་བའོ
sucked གསང་མབུ
sharp enough to དུག་གཅིག་མི་མ་
strong enough to བུད་གཅིག་མ་
praised ཉེན་བཏོན་བཅུ་
belching smoke བུ་བུ་བུ་
almost dead from thirst དབང་འཚོལ་བའོ
quivery ཀྱི་ཁོད་དུ་
embraced མི་མོ་བཏང་
devour གཏན་ཏན་ཞེས་
torch རྒྱུན་
surrounded by སྐེལ་བའོ
The King had two wives. One was Yincu, who had two lovely children. The daughter was Qeji Lhamo and the son was Nando Jiaso.

The other wife, Tsolha, was childless. She hated Yincu’s children very much. Everyday she thought of cruel ways to kill Yincu’s children but her plans always failed.

One day she pretended to be so sick she could not get out of bed. This went on for many days. It seemed that she would soon die. The King was frightened and called for the best doctors in the country to come and cure his ill wife. They came and examined her but could do nothing to make her better.

After the doctors left Tsolha said, “Great King, I am sorry to tell you that I must eat your two children’s hearts. If I don’t, I will die soon. Oh, great King help me…” moaned Tsolha.

Although the King did not want to kill his children, he loved Tsolha very much and finally ordered his executioner to kill his children and take their hearts. The executioner was a kind man and hated to kill children. He said to the two children, “You must run away. Tsolha wants to eat your hearts. I am supposed to kill you but I cannot. Please run as far away as you can and never return.” Then the executioner killed two dogs and took their hearts to Tsolha.

The children began running. It was a hot day with a bright shining sun. They became very thirsty.

Finally, Nando Jiaso was so thirsty that he was too weak to walk. His sister had to carry him. She carried him for two days and two nights. On the third day they reached a black tent belching smoke. Outside the tent an old woman was making butter. “Please give us some water, Grandmother,” said Qeji Lhamo. “We are very thirsty.”

“I can’t,” replied the old woman in a low angry voice. “I have no water on such a hot day.” Suddenly Nando Jiaso fainted. He was almost dead from thirst. The girl begged the old woman to look after her brother, while she went to look for water. At last she found a river behind a small hill. She drank ten mouthfuls of water as quickly as she could. Then she took a mouthful and went back as fast as she could to her brother. When she reached the tent, she found her brother had vanished.

The old woman was happily counting a lot of money.

“Where is my brother?” Qeji Lhamo demanded.

“A rich man bought him,” said the old woman in a quivery voice. “He said he would care for your brother.” Qeji Lhamo felt very sad and sorry for her poor brother and wept for a long time.

Five years later in spring, Qeji Lhamo reached a big town called Dudo. She went to the big beautiful house of a rich man and begged for food. When she looked through the door, she saw a boy who looked like her brother. He stared and ran to her. Qeji Lhamo had found her brother. They embraced and wept together.

The rich man allowed the brother and sister to live together in his home. They had a good life together for ten years. During this time Nando became a brave, strong, and handsome young man.

When Nando was nineteen he told his sister that he had decided to kill Tsolha and that he must return to their parents’ home. He then set off. It was evening when Nando reached the palace where the King and Queen lived. He could see nothing moving in the palace. Skeletons were lying everywhere. He was too frightened to look at them. He moved very quietly as he looked for his parents. When he came to a bedroom, he saw the King lying sadly in his bed. His poor father was so thin that you could see his bones.

When Nando was about to speak to his father, he felt the air move. He knew someone was coming. He hid under a table in the bedroom just as a terrible monster with nine heads appeared. As she got near the King, each of her nine heads smiled an evil smile. She said something and the ground began trembling. She sucked his father’s blood, smiled, and flew into the forest.

After the monster left, he called to his father and began weeping. When the King saw his son, he wept, “You must not stay here. Go away at once. The monster will devour your heart!”

“I will kill her,” said Nando.

“No. You can’t. Don’t risk your life. Go away quickly,” said the King.
Nando left his father and returned to the rich man’s house. He told his sister and the rich man all that he had seen in the palace. His sister was too afraid to speak. Nando asked the rich man, “Do you have a sword **sharp enough to** cut off nine heads at one time?”

“Yes,” replied the rich man.

“Do you have a torch **strong enough to** make a forest burn in three directions?” asked Nando.

“Yes,” replied the rich man.

When night came Nando took the sword and the torch, returned to his father’s bedroom, hid behind the door, and waited for the monster’s arrival. Hours passed. When she appeared, Nando swung his sword, slashing off eight of her nine heads. The frightened monster ran into the forest as fast as she could. Nando followed. However, when he reached the forest the monster was nowhere to be found.

He took out his torch and started a fire in three directions. The monster was in the middle of the forest. She tried to escape. She ran to the east but all she saw was fire. She ran to the west but all she saw was fire. When she ran south, Nando was waiting with his sword. As she ran back toward the center of the forest, she found herself **surrounded by** fire. She could not escape and screamed horribly as the greedy flames consumed her.

Nando saved his father but it was too late for his mother. The monster had killed her many years ago. Qeji Lhamo, Nando Jia, and their father lived together again happily. They always remembered the monster with nine heads. They also **praised** Buddha for giving them a calm life.
2+ 2?2+ 2? 2+ 2?2+ 2?

=3=3 =3=3 -- --  ? ?  ? ?

33 33

## ##

oo oo

c / c / c / c / -- --  3 3  3 3

AAAA

== ==

// // -- --  ; ;  ; ;

** **

i3i3 i3i3 -- --  g g  g g

YY YY

c / c / c / c / -- --  3 3  3 3

AAAA

== ==

// // -- --  ; ;  ; ;

** **

i3i3 i3i3 -- --  g g  g g

YY YY

c / c / c / c / -- --  3 3  3 3

AAAA

== ==

// // -- --  ; ;  ; ;

** **

i3i3 i3i3 -- --  g g  g g

YY YY

c / c / c / c / -- --  3 3  3 3

AAAA

== ==

// // -- --  ; ;  ; ;

** **

i3i3 i3i3 -- --  g g  g g

YY YY

c / c / c / c / -- --  3 3  3 3

AAAA

== ==

// // -- --  ; ;  ; ;

** **

i3i3 i3i3 -- --  g g  g g

YY YY

c / c / c / c / -- --  3 3  3 3

AAAA
One day she pretended to be so sick she could not get out of bed.

Nando saved his father but it was too late for his mother.

Nando asked the rich man, “Do you have a sword sharp enough to cut off nine heads?”

Finally, Nando Jiaso was so thirsty that he was too weak to walk.

As she got near the King, each of her nine heads smiled an evil smile.

Tsolha said, “A rich man bought him,” said the old woman.

“I must eat your two children’s hearts.”

After the monster left, he called to his father and began weeping.

As she got near the King, each of her nine heads smiled an evil smile.

Finally, Nando Jiaso was so thirsty that he was too weak to walk.

Five years later in spring, Qeji Lhamo reached a big town called Dudo.

He could see nothing moving in the palace.

He moved quietly as he looked for his parents.

He told his sister and the rich man all that he had seen in the palace.

He took out his torch and started a fire in three directions.

His poor father was so thin that you could see his bones.

Nando asked the rich man, “Do you have a sword sharp enough to cut off nine heads?”

Nando saved his father but it was too late for his mother.

One day she pretended to be so sick she could not get out of bed.

3. Put the sentences in the correct order.

___Tsolha said, “I must eat your two children’s hearts.”
___After the monster left, he called to his father and began weeping.
___As she got near the King, each of her nine heads smiled an evil smile.
___Finally, Nando Jiaso was so thirsty that he was too weak to walk.
___Five years later in spring, Qeji Lhamo reached a big town called Dudo.
___He could see nothing moving in the palace.
___He moved quietly as he looked for his parents.
___He told his sister and the rich man all that he had seen in the palace.
___He took out his torch and started a fire in three directions.
___His poor father was so thin that you could see his bones.
___Nando asked the rich man, “Do you have a sword sharp enough to cut off nine heads?”
___Nando saved his father but it was too late for his mother.
___One day she pretended to be so sick she could not get out of bed.
___“A rich man bought him,” said the old woman.
Outside the tent, an old woman was making butter.
Qeji Lhamo had found her brother.
She could not escape and screamed horribly as the greedy flames consumed her.
The executioner was a kind man and hated to kill children.
The King had two wives.
When Nando was about to speak to his father, he felt the air move.
When Nando was nineteen, he told his sister that he had decided to kill Tsolha.
When she appeared, Nando swung his sword, slashing off eight of her nine heads.
When she reached the tent, she found her brother had vanished.

4. Put these words in the blanks below: a, and, the, in, to, for, on, of, from, after, at, behind, with.

a. _____ children began running.
b. It was _____ hot day _____ _____ bright shining sun.
c. Nando Jiaso was too weak _____ walk.
d. His sister had _____ carry him.
e. She carried him _____ two days _____ two nights.
f. _____ third day they reached _____ black tent.
g. Outside _____ tent, an old woman was making butter.
h. “I can’t,” replied _____ old woman _____ _____ low angry voice.
i. “I have no water _____ such _____ hot day.”
j. He was almost dead _____ thirst.
k. ___ girl begged __ woman __ look __ her brother, while she went ___ look ___ water.
l. _____ last, she found _____ river _____ _____ small hill.
m. She drank ten mouthfuls _____ water quickly.
n. She took _____ mouthful _____ went back _____ her brother.
o. She reached _____ tent.
p. _____ woman was happily counting _____ lot _____ money.
q. “_____ man bought him,” said _____ old woman _____ _____ quivery voice.
r. “He said he would care ______ your brother.”
s. Qeji Lhamo felt sad _____ sorry ______ her poor brother _____ wept ______ _____ long time.
t. _____ spring, Qeji Lhamo reached _____ big town.

5. Write answers to these questions.

a. What did Tsolha say she must eat? i. When did Qeji Lhamo see her brother again?
b. What did the King order the executioner to do? j. Where was he?
c. What did the executioner tell the children? k. With whom was he living?
d. When did the children reach the tent belching black smoke? l. When did he decide to kill Tsolha?
e. What did Qeji Lhamo ask the old woman? m. What was lying everywhere in the palace?
f. Where did Qeji Lhamo find water? n. How did his father look?
g. When she returned to the tent, what was the old woman doing? o. What did the ghost do to the father?
h. What had the old woman done with the girl’s brother? p. What did Nando ask the rich man for?
q. How many heads did Nando cut off?
1. Vocabulary

scriptures
market
pointed to
upset
recalled
devil
urinated
grabbed
luckily
faithful
handsome
pearl
rely

lure him out
lamenting
lure him out
released
lamenting
released
lamenting
released
lamenting
released
lamenting
released
lamenting
released
lamenting
released

porch
pitiful
encountered
ugly
magic
waving
informed
tumbled
disguised
sunny
square
withered
Zhaxi was a strange young man who stayed in his room most of the time reading scriptures. His father wanted him to come out of his room and do something. He decided to try and lure him out of the room, tossed a gold coin on the porch, and said, “Come out Zhaxi!”

Zhaxi came out, noticed the gold coin, and called happily to his father, “Father, I found a gold coin on the porch.”

“Lucky man, you found a gold coin. What will you find in the yard?” replied his father.
The next day his father threw a gold coin in the yard and called, “Zhaxi, come out to the yard!” Zhaxi found the gold coin in the yard and told his father.
The third day his father threw a gold coin outside the gate. You can guess what Zhaxi did on that day.
The father said to Zhaxi, “Now take these three gold coins and buy us some food.” Zhaxi started to the market. On the way he saw several children torturing a cat. Zhaxi thought that the cat was in a very pitiful condition, bought the cat from the children with a gold coin, and carried it home.

“What did you buy?” asked his father. Zhaxi pointed to the cat. His father said nothing.
The next day on the way, he met some children tormenting a dog. Zhaxi bought the dog for a gold coin and took it home. His father was upset but remained silent.

On the third day Zhaxi met a hunter holding a white snake. Zhaxi said, “Please sell the snake to me. I’ll give you a gold coin,” and the hunter agreed.

Zhaxi thanked him, went to the rock, and put the small white snake on the ground. When Zhaxi turned to leave, the snake said, “If you need my help, come and find me here.”

When Zhaxi got home, his father’s face was ugly with anger. He knew Zhaxi had not bought food. His father loudly and angrily said, “Take your cat and dog and leave here immediately.” Zhaxi took the two animals he had bought and sadly left his home.

Then he recalled what the snake had said and went to the rock. The snake said, “Don’t be sad. I’ll help you. I’m Dragon King’s son. Go to Dragon Palace. My father will offer you much gold and silver but don’t take it. That gold and silver will become dirt as soon as you leave the palace. Instead, ask for the gold bowl on the stove. My father will give it to you.”

Zhaxi did exactly what the snake said and obtained the gold bowl. It was a magic bowl that gave him whatever he wished for. When Zhaxi and his two animals felt hungry, he closed his eyes and asked the gold bowl for some food. Very soon, delicious food appeared. With the bowl’s help, they continued their journey for many days.

One day they reached a riverbank. This place was very beautiful. Zhaxi closed his eyes and asked for a house. When he opened his eyes, a wooden house was there. He and the cat and dog lived happily there.

The King who lived on the other side of the river heard about the gold bowl. He wanted it very much and sent for a devil. The King said to the devil, “I promise to give you a person a day if you get me that gold bowl.”

The devil agreed, changed himself into a man, and went to the riverbank. Zhaxi saw the man waving to him from the other side of the river. Zhaxi thought, “That man must be poor like me.”

He then said to the gold bowl, “Please let that man come to this side,” and the man suddenly appeared in front of Zhaxi, who had no idea that this man really was a devil. Zhaxi asked the man to live with them and he did. Zhaxi thought he was a good man.

One day Zhaxi said, “I’m going to go home to see my father. Please look after my cat and dog while I’m away.” When he left, he did not take the gold bowl. The devil stole it and gave it to the King.

The cat and dog knew what the man had done and decided to steal the gold bowl back. They snuck into the King’s palace and saw that the devil and the King were talking.
The devil said, “Where is the gold bowl? We must take care or Zhaxi will steal it back.”
The King said, “Don’t fret. It’s very safe. It is in King Mouse’s hands.”
The cat went to King Mouse’s gate and pretended to be dead. Soon some mice noticed their enemy, the cat, lying dead at the gate. They happily jumped up and down and urinated on the cat’s body. The cat never moved.

A mouse informed King Mouse and he came out and jumped on the cat. As soon as he did so the cat grabbed King Mouse with his teeth and said, “Give me the gold bowl or I’ll eat you.” The cat was soon given the gold bowl. After taking the gold bowl and eating several mice, the cat left.

On their way home, the dog and cat had to cross the river. The cat held the bowl in his mouth. The dog asked, “Do you have it?” The cat nodded his head.

The dog asked this repeatedly. Finally, the cat angrily and loudly said, “Yes!” As soon as he said this, the gold bowl tumbled into the river.

The cat noticed a big fish swimming in the river and caught it. Luckily, the gold bowl was in the fish’s mouth so the two happily went home with the gold bowl and waited for Zhaxi’s return.

When Zhaxi eventually returned, they gave him the gold bowl and told him what had happened. A short time later the devil disguised as the same man waved his hands from across the river.

This time the devil was unlucky. From his faithful animals’ account, Zhaxi knew the man was a devil, and asked the gold bowl to put the man in the river. The man suddenly disappeared but Zhaxi and the animals could hear faint cries of “Help, Help…”

One sunny morning some days later, Zhaxi went to the King’s palace to ask the princess to be his wife. Zhaxi had heard that the princess was beautiful and kind.

After Zhaxi made his request, the King looked at Zhaxi carefully and shook his head. He thought, “This man is so poor and he wants to marry my daughter!” The King shouted, “Cut off his head!”

However, when the princess saw Zhaxi she fell in love with him immediately. She thought he was handsome and kind. “Dear Father, don’t kill him. I want to be his wife,” pleaded the princess.

“I will not let you marry this poor man,” said the King. Then he thought a moment and said, “Well, Zhaxi, if you want to marry my daughter you must do several things. You must bring me a bag of gold, a square egg, a big pearl, and on the fifteenth of the twelfth month it must thunder three times.”

Zhaxi agreed, left, and decided to ask a famous Lama for advice. As he was walking to the famous Lama’s place, he passed by a temple. He went inside and saw a Buddha image. The image said, “I don’t know why no one worships me.”

Zhaxi replied, “I will ask the Lama,” and continued his journey.

Soon he met a man wailing under a tree. “I don’t know why the tree has suddenly withered. I rely on this tree for my life,” said the man.

“I will ask the Lama,” replied Zhaxi.

Zhaxi walked on and encountered a dragon. “I came here to drink some water. I don’t know why I can’t fly,” said the dragon.

“I will ask the Lama,” replied Zhaxi. Then he walked on and met an old man whose hair was as white as snow. “Boy, where are you going?” asked the old man.

“I’m going to visit a Lama,” Zhaxi replied and said the Lama’s name.

“That Lama is me,” said the old man. Zhaxi was very happy, told his story, and asked the Lama to help those he had met on the road.

The Lama said, “You can get those things if you help those you met on the road. There is a big pearl in the dragon’s mouth. If you remove it, the dragon can fly again. There is a bag of gold under the dry tree’s roots. If you take the gold away, the tree will come back to life. Under the Buddha image there is a square egg. If you remove it, many people will worship the image.”

Zhaxi thanked the old Lama and began his return journey.

When he met the dragon, he promised Zhaxi to make it thunder three times on the fifteenth of the twelfth month. Zhaxi took the other things to the King’s palace. The King was very surprised.

Zhaxi’s wedding started on the fifteenth day of the twelfth month and, on that day the dragon made it thunder three times.

Not long afterwards, Zhaxi became the King and led a happy life.
བོད་ཡིག་ཟིང་བན།

བོད་ཡིག་ཟིང་བན་ལ་ཕན་ཡོན་གཉེན་པོ་བསྒོད་པའི་ཐོབ་ཆེན་པོ་མེང་ཞིའི་ཁྲིམས་པའི་ཞེས་བསྡོད་་བོད་བཤད། བོད་ཡིག་ཟིང་བན་ལ་ཕན་ཡོན་གཉེན་པོ་བསྒོད་པའི་ཐོབ་ཆེན་པོ་མེང་ཞིའི་ཁྲིམས་པའི་ཞེས་བསྡོད་་བོད་བཤད།

བོད་ཡིག་ཟིང་བན་ལ་ཕན་ཡོན་གཉེན་པོ་བསྒོད་པའི་ཐོབ་ཆེན་པོ་མེང་ཞིའི་ཁྲིམས་པའི་ཞེས་བསྡོད་་བོད་བཤད།

བོད་ཡིག་ཟིང་བན་ལ་ཕན་ཡོན་གཉེན་པོ་བསྒོད་པའི་ཐོབ་ཆེན་པོ་མེང་ཞིའི་ཁྲིམས་པའི་ཞེས་བསྡོད་་བོད་བཤད།
ལོགས་པར་བོགས་ཀྱི་དཔོན་དཔོན་ཤོར་བསྡུ་འབྲེལ། འཕྲིན་སྤྱོད་ཀྱི་ཁྲིམས་ཐོབ་དོན་ཐོབ་ཐོབ་ཅིག་ཐེག་མཆོག་ཅིག་ལེ་བསྡུ་འབྲེལ།

ལོགས་པར་བོགས་ཀྱི་དཔོན་དཔོན་ཤོར་བསྡུ་འབྲེལ། འཕྲིན་སྤྱོད་ཀྱི་ཁྲིམས་ཐོབ་དོན་ཐོབ་ཐོབ་ཅིག་ཐེག་མཆོག་ཅིག་ལེ་བསྡུ་འབྲེལ།

ལོགས་པར་བོགས་ཀྱི་དཔོན་དཔོན་ཤོར་བསྡུ་འབྲེལ། འཕྲིན་སྤྱོད་ཀྱི་ཁྲིམས་ཐོབ་དོན་ཐོབ་ཐོབ་ཅིག་ཐེག་མཆོག་ཅིག་ལེ་བསྡུ་འབྲེལ།

ལོགས་པར་བོགས་ཀྱི་དཔོན་དཔོན་ཤོར་བསྡུ་འབྲེལ། འཕྲིན་སྤྱོད་ཀྱི་ཁྲིམས་ཐོབ་དོན་ཐོབ་ཐོབ་ཅིག་ཐེག་མཆོག་ཅིག་ལེ་བསྡུ་འབྲེལ།
ཉིམོརི་ཐོབ་པར་འཚིད་ིས་ཐུབ་ཀྱིས། མི་འགར་ཐོབ་མི་ཐུབ་ཀྱིས་ཡུལ་ཐུབ་བོད་ལ་གཞི་ཐུབ་བོད་དུ་ཤིས་པར་ཐུབ་བོད་དུ་ཤིས་པར་ཐུབ་བོད་དུ་ཤིས་པར་ཐུབ་བོད་

ཉིམོརི་ཐོབ་པར་འཚིད་ིས་ཐུབ་ཀྱིས། མི་འགར་ཐོབ་མི་ཐུབ་ཀྱིས་ཡུལ་ཐུབ་བོད་ལ་གཞི་ཐུབ་བོད་དུ་ཤིས་པར་ཐུབ་བོད་དུ་ཤིས་པར་ཐུབ་བོད་དུ་ཤིས་པར་ཐུབ་བོད་

ཉིམོརི་ཐོབ་པར་འཚིད་ིས་ཐུབ་ཀྱིས། མི་འགར་ཐོབ་མི་ཐུབ་ཀྱིས་ཡུལ་ཐུབ་བོད་ལ་གཞི་ཐུབ་བོད་དུ་ཤིས་པར་ཐུབ་བོད་དུ་ཤིས་པར་ཐུབ་བོད་

ཉིམོརི་ཐོབ་པར་འཚིད་ིས་ཐུབ་ཀྱིས། མི་འགར་ཐོབ་མི་ཐུབ་ཀྱིས་ཡུལ་ཐུབ་བོད་ལ་གཞི་ཐུབ་བོད་དུ་ཤིས་པར་ཐུབ་བོད་དུ་ཤིས་པར་ཐུབ་བོད་

ཉིམོརི་ཐོབ་པར་འཚིད་ིས་ཐུབ་ཀྱིས། མི་འགར་ཐོབ་མི་ཐུབ་ཀྱིས་ཡུལ་ཐུབ་བོད་ལ་གཞི་ཐུབ་བོད་དུ་ཤིས་པར་ཐུབ་བོད་དུ་ཤིས་པར་ཐུབ་བོད་

ཉིམོརི་ཐོབ་པར་འཚིད་ིས་ཐུབ་ཀྱིས། མི་འགར་ཐོབ་མི་ཐུབ་ཀྱིས་ཡུལ་ཐུབ་བོད་ལ་གཞི་ཐུབ་བོད་དུ་ཤིས་པར་ཐུབ་བོད་

ཉིམོརི་ཐོབ་པར་འཚིད་ིས་ཐུབ་ཀྱིས། མི་འགར་ཐོབ་མི་ཐུབ་ཀྱིས་ཡུལ་ཐུབ་བོད་ལ་གཞི་ཐུབ་བོད་

་264•
a. ___He saw several children torturing a cat.
b. ___It was a magic bowl that gave him whatever he wished for.
c. ___Mice happily jumped up and down and urinated on the cat’s body.
d. ___The cat grabbed King Mouse with his teeth.
e. ___The devil stole it and gave it to the King.
f. ___The gold bowl tumbled into the river.
g. ___The gold bowl was in the fish’s mouth.
h. ___The princess fell in love with Zhaxi.
i. ___The third day his father threw a gold coin outside the gate.
j. ___When he opened his eyes, a wooden house was there.
k. ___Zhaxi asked the gold bowl to put the man in the river.
l. ___Zhaxi became the King and led a happy life.
m. ___Zhaxi bought the dog for a gold coin and took it home.
n. ___Zhaxi noticed the gold coin, and called, “Father, I found a gold coin on the porch.”
o. ___Zhaxi met a hunter holding a white snake.
p. ___Zhaxi took the two animals he had bought and sadly left his home.
q. ___Zhaxi was a strange young man.
r. ___Zhaxi’s wedding started on the fifteenth of the twelfth month.
4. Match the speaker in Part I with what they said in Part II. Each speaker may be matched with only one sentence.

PART I

a. a deity image  b. a hunter  c. a man  d. a white snake  e. the cat
f. the devil  g. the dog  h. the King  i. the princess  j. Zhaxi
k. Zhaxi’s father

PART II

1. __ “Come out Zhaxi!”
2. __ “Father, I found a gold coin on the porch.”
3. __ “Under that rock.”
4. __ “If you need my help, come and find me here.”
5. __ “Give me the gold bowl or I’ll eat you.”
6. __ “Do you have it?”
7. __ “Dear Father, don’t kill him.”
8. __ “I don’t know why no one worships me.”
9. __ “Boy, where are you going?”
10. __ “I promise to give you a person a day if you get me that gold bowl.”
11. __ “Where is the gold bowl? We must take care or Zhaxi will steal it back.”

5. Write answers to these questions.

a. Why did Zhaxi’s father want him to come out of his room?
b. How did Zhaxi’s father lure him out of his room?
c. What three animals did Zhaxi buy?
d. Why did Zhaxi buy the three animals?
e. Why was Zhaxi’s father angry and why did he make him leave their home?
f. Whose father was Dragon King?
g. Where did Zhaxi get a magic bowl?
h. How did King Mouse get the magic bowl?
i. How did the cat get the magic bowl?
j. Why did the princess want to marry Zhaxi?
k. Why did Zhaxi want to visit a famous Lama?
l. What was in the dragon’s mouth?
m. What was under the tree’s roots?
n. Where was the square egg?
o. When did it thunder three times?
Vocabulary

a bone with meat  འབྲས་པ་བོད་པ།
a crude thick rope  འབྲས་པ་ཐེག་ཆྲུང་པ།
a frog leapt out  འབྲས་པ་ཆུང་ལྟ་བཅོམ་པ།
a hole lined with stone  འབྲས་པ་ནུས་ོན་ཐོན་པ།
a horse’s hoofprint  འབྲས་པ་ཕོ་བོ་བོག་བེད་པ།
a man pretending to be a monk  འབྲས་པ་གཞི་བོད་པ།
a rich landlord  འབྲས་པ་ཞུས་པོ་བོད་པ།
a tent pitched in a beautiful canyon  འབྲས་པ་དབང་འཛིན་པ་ནུས་པ།

admiring  འབྲས་པ་དོན་བོད་པ།
adopt  འབྲས་པ་དབྱིན་པ།
adorned  འབྲས་པ་དབྱིན་པ།
afford  འབྲས་པ་དབང་པོ་བོད་པ།
agreed  འབྲས་པ་དབང་པོ་བོད་པ།
agreed meeting place  འབྲས་པ་དབང་པོ་བོད་པ།
almost dead from thirst  འབྲས་པ་གཏོང་བོད་པ།
alone in the world  འབྲས་པ་གཏོང་བོད་པ།
alongside  འབྲས་པ་དབང་པོ་བོད་པ།
amazed  འབྲས་པ་དབང་པོ་བོད་པ།
angrily demanded  འབྲས་པ་གཏོང་བོད་པ།
animal bones  འབྲས་པ་དབང་པོ་བོད་པ།
announced  འབྲས་པ་དབང་པོ་བོད་པ།
antelope horn  འབྲས་པ་སྤྲོད་བོད་པ།
anticipating  འབྲས་པ་དབང་པོ་བོད་པ།
approval  འབྲས་པ་དབང་པོ་བོད་པ།
arguing  འབྲས་པ་དབང་པོ་བོད་པ།
armful  འབྲས་པ་དབང་པོ་བོད་པ།
arrogant  འབྲས་པ་དབང་པོ་བོད་པ།
artist  འབྲས་པ་དབང་པོ་བོད་པ།
as large as a  འབྲས་པ་དབང་པོ་བོད་པ།
as time passed  འབྲས་པ་དབང་པོ་བོད་པ།
astonished  འབྲས་པ་དབང་པོ་བོད་པ།
at a loss  འབྲས་པ་དབང་པོ་བོད་པ།
at dusk  འབྲས་པ་དབང་པོ་བོད་པ།
at great danger  འབྲས་པ་དབང་པོ་བོད་པ།
at sunrise  འབྲས་པ་དབང་པོ་བོད་པ།
atop  འབྲས་པ་དབང་པོ་བོད་པ།
attack  འབྲས་པ་དབང་པོ་བོད་པ།
ax  འབྲས་པ་དབང་པོ་བོད་པ།
banged  འབྲས་པ་དབང་པོ་བོད་པ།
basking in the sun  འབྲས་པ་དབང་པོ་བོད་པ།
beard  འབྲས་པ་དབང་པོ་བོད་པ།
beast  འབྲས་པ་དབང་པོ་བོད་པ།
beat gongs and drums  འབྲས་པ་དབང་པོ་བོད་པ།
beggar  འབྲས་པ་དབང་པོ་བོད་པ།
begged  འབྲས་པ་དབང་པོ་བོད་པ།
belching smoke  འབྲས་པ་དབང་པོ་བོད་པ།
beseeched Buddha  འབྲས་པ་དབང་པོ་བོད་པ།
best  འབྲས་པ་དབང་པོ་བོད་པ།
bit  འབྲས་པ་དབང་པོ་བོད་པ།
bit through  འབྲས་པ་དབང་པོ་བོད་པ།
blacksmith ་བོད་དཔའ།
blood འཇམ་ཤིང
blushed ཤེས་ཤེས།
boarding school རོ་སྤོད་ལས་ཐོབ་སློབ
boil མི་བྲྲ་བྱེད།
borrow ཚུ་བོར་བ།
borrowed ཚུ་བོད།
bottom འབུར་བཞིན།
branch རྟེན་བཞིན།
brilliance རྟེན་འབྲུད།
bundles མདོ་འབྲུག།
burned to death གཞི་བཞི་སྤིང་།
burning གཞི་བཞི་འཁོར།
burst དབྱཱིའི་བུར།
businessman རྡོག་པའི་དཔའ་དབྱེ་
butcher རྡོག་པའི་དཔའ་དབྱེ།
by any means possible བོད་ལས་ཐོབ་སློབ
camel འབྲུང་།
carpenter གཞི་བཞི་སྤིང་།
caught in a trap གཞི་བཞི་སྤིང་།
cave རྟེན་བཞིན།
celebrated རྟེན་བཞིན་སྐྱེན་
change his habits རྟེན་བཞིན་བཅོམ་
chant scriptures རྟེན་འབྲུད་
chanting རྟེན་འབྲུད།
charged a butter tax རྟེན་འབྲུད་
chas ed (ran after) རྟེན་འབྲུད་སྐྱེན་
cheese བདུན་།
chest ཚུ་བོད་དཔའ།
childless རྟེན་འབྲུད་དཔའ།
chirping རྟེན་འབྲུད་ཀུར་མ།
clamped shut རྟེན་འབྲུད་སྐྱེན།
clashed རྟེན་འབྲུད་
claws རྟེན་འབྲུད་
cleaned རྟེན་འབྲུད་སྐྱེན་
clear water གཞི་གཡུ་
clearly རྟེན་འབྲུད་
cleft lip རྟེན་འབྲུད་
coach རྟེན་འབྲུད་
cobwebs རྟེན་འབྲུད་
collect firewood རྟེན་འབྲུད་སྐྱེན་
collected fuel རྟེན་འབྲུད་སྐྱེན།
collecting fuel རྟེན་འབྲུད་སྐྱེན།
collecting yak dung for fuel རྟེན་འབྲུད་སྐྱེན།
comes at you རྟེན་འབྲུད་སྐྱེན་
comfortable རྟེན་འབྲུད་
command (order) རྟེན་འབྲུད།
commented རྟེན་འབྲུད།
consequently རྟེན་འབྲུད་
contained རྟེན་འབྲུད།
continued on རྟེན་འབྲུད།
control རྟེན་འབྲུད།
cornfield རྟེན་འབྲུད་
could not fight and win རྟེན་འབྲུད་
courtyard རྟེན་འབྲུད་
covered རྟེན་འབྲུད་
crashed into རྟེན་འབྲུད་

•268•
crawled
creeping on the ground
crowded
cruel
cured
curse
cut it in two
daughter-in-law
deceived
decided
deep in the forest
defeat
defecated
deity
depressed
delicious
delighted
delighted (very glad; very happy)
delightedly exclaimed
delighting
delivered a baby
demanded
depended on
descended
despite
death
devil
devised a plan
devour
dig it up
disappeared
discarded
discovered
discussed (talked about)
disguised
dismounted
doing fieldwork
Don’t count your chickens before they hatch.
donkey
dragging
dragon
dreaming
dressed up
dried bread
drip
dropped
drove the livestock away
drown him
drowned
drug
dry and brittle
dry up
drying up
dug a hole
dug a tunnel
dumplings
during his travels
dusk
dusting away
dutiful
eagerly
eagle
eagle’s wing
earn money to live
ears of corn
eaves
edible roots
efficacious
eiders
elephant
embraced
emerge
emitting
encountered
enormous (very big, huge)
entered the palace
entrance
entreated
envious
escaped
established his own tent
eventually
everyone
ewe
exactly
excellent
exchanged
excitedly
excrement
executioner
exhausted
expensive
explaining
explode
extinguishing
faint
faithful
family member
famous
fangs
fantasizing
fascinated
father-in-law
fatten
feelings like a human
feigned sincerity
felt a pain
festival
fetch
t fetch water
fetched  ਸਰਗਰਮ | ਸਰਗਰਮੀ | ਸਰਗਰਮੀ
fetched water  ਸਰਗਰਮੀ
fierce  ਦੀੰਤਾ | ਦੀੰਤਾ | ਦੀੰਤਾ
filled with  ਹੋ ਪਾਣੀ
firewood  ਧੂੱਲਾ | ਧੂੱਲਾ | ਧੂੱਲਾ
fishing  ਦੋਡੀਆਂ
flapping his wings  ਪ੍ਰੋਸਤਾਦੀਆਂ
flat and empty land  ਮੁੰਨੀਆਂ
flattered  ਮੁਸੂੰਦਾ ਮੁਸੂੰਦਾ
flavorless  ਮੁਖੀਆਂ
fleeing  ਬੀਜਾਂ
flesh  ਰੁੱਖਾਂ
flesh and blood  ਰੁੱਖਾਂ
flick  ਹੁੱਕਤਾਂ
float  ਪ੍ਰਹੱਦਾਂ
floated  ਪ੍ਰਹੱਦਾਂ
flock  ਬੀਜਾਂ
floods  ਮੰਗਣਾਂ
foggy  ਮੰਗਣਾਂ
foolish  ਮੁਸੂੰਦਾ ਮੁਸੂੰਦਾ
foot of the tree  ਮ੃ਦੇ ਮ੃ਦੇ
for a long time  ਮੱਧ ਮੱਧ
forbid (don’t allow)  ਮੁਹਟਾਂ
forest  ਸਲਾਗੀਆਂ
forested  ਸਲਾਗੀਆਂ
fox  ਨਾਲਾਂ
frantic  ਮੁਹਟਾਂ
freed  ਮੁਹਟਾਂ
fresh dung  ਸਰਗਰਮੀ
frightened  ਸਰਗਰਮੀ
frog  ਸਰਗਰਮੀ
galloped off  ਸਰਗਰਮੀ
gasoline  ਸਰਗਰਮੀ
gather enough strength  ਸਰਗਰਮੀ
gathered  ਸਰਗਰਮੀ
gave birth to  ਸਰਗਰਮੀ
gentleman  ਸਰਗਰਮੀ
gently  ਸਰਗਰਮੀ
ghost  ਸਰਗਰਮੀ
gnawed  ਸਰਗਰਮੀ
goblin  ਸਰਗਰਮੀ
godess  ਸਰਗਰਮੀ
good sign  ਸਰਗਰਮੀ
goose  ਸਰਗਰਮੀ
goslings  ਸਰਗਰਮੀ
grabbed  ਸਰਗਰਮੀ
gradually  ਸਰਗਰਮੀ
grain  ਸਰਗਰਮੀ
grain of rice  ਸਰਗਰਮੀ
grandpa (grandfather)  ਸਰਗਰਮੀ
grasped his walking stick  ਸਰਗਰਮੀ
graze (eat grass)  ਸਰਗਰਮੀ
greedy  ਸਰਗਰਮੀ
grew up together (were raised together)  ਸਰਗਰਮੀ
groaned  ਸਰਗਰਮੀ
grotto

gullible

gun band

hacked (chopped, cut)

had (gave birth to) a baby boy

had become wild like an animal

had neither children nor livestock.

had nothing except

half-brother

hammer

handful

handsome

hanging

hardly speak

harvest

has risen

hatchet

head of the family

heap of ash

heart

held its breath

herd of horses

herded livestock

hesitated

Hey!

hidden

hired

his left eye was blind

his right leg was up on a rock bracing a gun

home was bathed in sunshine

homesick

honest

honor

hooves

hopping

hopping through

horizon

horrible sight

horse

hung out of

hunted

hunter

hunter’s trap

hurt someone’s feelings

I broke a promise to our mother

ignored

imitated

impatient

impatiently

imprison

in a bad mood
in a flash
in a very high and loud voice
in excitement
in no mood
in order to
in prison
in vain
increasingly believed
informed
inquired
inscribed
insisted
instead
intended to
intently
interrupted
investigate
invisible
irrigated
it was clear (easy to understand)
jealous
jerked and jerked
journey
judge
jumped back
jumped out
juniper tree (pine, cedar, conifer, evergreen)
just like I killed your mother
justice
kept his promises
kicked
knew how to cook
knocking them to the ground
kowtowed
ladder
laden
lamenting a death
landed on his butt
landed on top
landlord
laughingly
lazily
leaned on
led a lazy life
led a life
ledge
leered
left
lend
licking
lied
liquid
lit a fire
livelihood
livestock
loaded
loaded the bundles
loaf of bread
loaned
looked after
looked through
looking for
loosened
lost forever
lost his grip
lovely
lower body
lowered
loyal
luckily
lumps
lunged
lure him out
lying
made a living
magic
magician
making butter
mane
market
master
meanwhile
meat
meat on your bones
melts
merrily
messy
mice (mouse)
middle
million
minister
mirror
miserable
mixed
moaning in pain
monastery
monk
monkey
monster
moon rose
mother-in-law
motioned
mounted
mounted a horse
mouthfuls
mud
mumbled (speak unclearly)
murmuring
must
My Lama!
my own safety
naughty
needles
needs to be fixed
neighed
nest
never take pity on
nevertheless
night had fallen
No one can compare to me. ("No one is my equal." / "I am better than everyone else.")
nobleman
nobody
nodded in agreement
not only… but…
nothing he could do
noticed
obey
obligated to pay taxes
offered
oily
oldest
on the condition
one said to the other
only living relative
ordered
ordinary
overhead
overjoyed
owned much property
owner
paid attention to
painful knee added to her discomfort
palace
panting
Paradise
passed away (died)
patient
paws
peach
pearl
peasant
permanently
permission
persevered
pesky
picked up
piece by piece
pieces of silver
pigeon
pilgrim
pityful (MenuItem)
plan had worked (MenuItem)
planned (MenuItem)
platform (MenuItem)
pleaded (MenuItem)
plopped down (MenuItem)
plowing (MenuItem)
pointed to (MenuItem)
poking through (MenuItem)
polluted (MenuItem)
pool (MenuItem)
porch (MenuItem)
pork (MenuItem)
pots (MenuItem)
pounded (MenuItem)
pounded on (MenuItem)
praised (MenuItem)
precious turquoise bead (MenuItem)
prepared supper (MenuItem)
pretended (MenuItem)
princesses (MenuItem)
prison (MenuItem)
profusely (much, a lot) (MenuItem)
promised (MenuItem)
property (MenuItem)
protect (MenuItem)
proudly (MenuItem)
punish him (MenuItem)
punished (MenuItem)
put a hammer up the other’s sleeve (MenuItem)
puzzled (MenuItem)
quivery (MenuItem)
rabbit (MenuItem)
raced away as fast as a bird flies (MenuItem)
raced away (MenuItem)
rared everywhere (MenuItem)
rare animals (MenuItem)
rather than (MenuItem)
reached (MenuItem)
reached the lake (MenuItem)
readied (MenuItem)
realize (MenuItem)
rebel (MenuItem)
recalled (MenuItem)
received high marks (MenuItem)
recite (MenuItem)
recognize (MenuItem)
recovering (MenuItem)
reflection (MenuItem)
refused (MenuItem)
regretted (MenuItem)
Reincarnate Lama (MenuItem)
reins (MenuItem)
relatives (MenuItem)
right leg was twisted

sadly
shook like a leaf in the wind

soberly looked at

soaked

so deep he could not get out

sniffed

snarled

snake

slipped something into my jacket

slept from morning until night

sleeves

simple food

single

skeleton

skin

slaughter

sleeping flower

slept from morning until night

slipped something into my jacket

small turquoise lion

snake

snarled

sniffed

snowy

so deep he could not get out

so thin you could see his bones

soaked

soberly looked at

some time later

someone with power

son-in-law

sought refuge

speechless

spied (saw, noticed)

spit

splendid

spoke very kindly

spring songs

sprouted out

square

squatted

squawking

standing in a line

started to slip

steal

stole

stomach

storeroom

storks

straining your ears to listen

strange dream

stream

stretched out

strong enough to

strong wind

stuck
stuck more deeply
stupid
sucked
suffocating
sunny
sunny and pleasant
sunrise
sunstroke
superb
support
surely
surrounded
swear an oath
switch
swollen
tail
take a wife
taking pity on it
tear
tended
terribly painful
the foot of
the gods have taken pity
the origin of
The same way that I did.
the sight of
their histories
thieves (thief)
thirsty
this and that
threw himself
thumb
thunder
thunder boomed
tiger
tight
tiny
tiptoed
tiredness
to attack
to graze
to keep his sheep safe
to last a month
to rob
to tend her son
to test
to trade
to urinate
too fat to climb up
torch
tormenting
tortoise
torturing
touched
town leader
trader

tramps

trap

travel

travels

treasure

treasures

trembling

trick

trick him into

tricked

tried your best

trust

trying to smother the fire

tug the rope

tumbled

tumbled into

turquoise

turtle

twenty years passed

ugly

unable

uncomfortable

unconscious

uncultivated fields

understandingly

unexpected good fortune

unfortunate

unknown

unwilling

upper body

upset

urinated

valleys

valuable

value

vanish

vast

very pleased

wag my tail

wailing

waited outside

Wake up!

walked along

wallet

was treated unkindly

watchdogs

watermelon

waterweed

waving

weeds

weeping

well enough to work

well

went along a path to a hilltop
westward ་བ་བོགས་སོགས་པ་
What’s the matter with you? རོ་བཏོང་ནི་བ་བོགས་སོགས་པ་
whenever གཤེགས་ཉིད།
whispered རོ་བཏོང་ནི་བ་བོགས་སོགས་པ་
whom ས་
wicked (bad, evil) རོ་བཏོང་ནི་བ་བོགས་སོགས་པ་
wicker basket རོ་བཏོང་ནི་བ་བོགས་སོགས་པ་
widower རོ་བཏོང་ནི་བ་བོགས་སོགས་པ་
wife རོ་བཏོང་ནི་བ་བོགས་སོགས་པ་
wild animals རོ་བཏོང་ནི་བ་བོགས་སོགས་པ་
wild yak meat རོ་བཏོང་ནི་བ་བོགས་སོགས་པ་
window ledge རོ་བཏོང་ནི་བ་བོགས་སོགས་པ་
wither རོ་བཏོང་ནི་བ་བོགས་སོགས་པ་
wonder རོ་བཏོང་ནི་བ་བོགས་སོགས་པ་
wondered རོ་བཏོང་ནི་བ་བོགས་སོགས་པ་
wonderful རོ་བཏོང་ནི་བ་བོགས་སོགས་པ་
wonderful lies རོ་བཏོང་ནི་བ་བོགས་སོགས་པ་
wood was stacked རོ་བཏོང་ནི་བ་བོགས་སོགས་པ་
worm རོ་བཏོང་ནི་བ་བོགས་སོགས་པ་
worriedly རོ་བཏོང་ནི་བ་བོགས་སོགས་པ་
worth རོ་བཏོང་ནི་བ་བོགས་སོགས་པ་
wrap རོ་བཏོང་ནི་བ་བོགས་སོགས་པ་
yak shed རོ་བཏོང་ནི་བ་བོགས་སོགས་པ་
yell རོ་བཏོང་ནི་བ་བོགས་སོགས་པ་
You tricked me! རོ་བཏོང་ནི་བ་བོགས་སོགས་པ་
you’d better (you had better) རོ་བཏོང་ནི་བ་བོགས་སོགས་པ་